7. Annex: Full documentation of the EHRI_EAD schema (version 1, March 2017)

Guidelines

In the context of the EHRI project, we created an ODD base on the EAD ODD maintained by the Parthenos project, to document the specific rules and constraints of the EHRI data model for archival descriptions. In this new ODD file, called EHRI_EAD.odd, the generic EAD specification is imported and serves the baseline of specification. The additional constraints are added only to the elements that they refer to.

The constraints added to EAD ensures a smooth ingestion of external data in the EHRI's database.

First, some EAD elements are required for the good functioning of the database, for instance unique identifiers for all the descriptions (contained in <eadid>).

Second, some elements are made mandatory for more qualitative reasons: for instance to ease the discoverability of its resources, EHRI wants that a minimal description in English is provided with each description unit. We encourage the use of ISO standards for the representation of languages, scripts, dates, etc, as well as the interlinkage of entities, via the use of authority lists.

Schematron rules were already used in EHRI, so we integrated them directly in this EHRI-EAD ODD.

Specification

Elements

<abbr>

<abbr> (Abbreviation) A generic element for a shortened form of a word, including an acronym.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
	expan The *expan* attribute can be used to supply the full form of an abbreviated word for indexing or searching purposes.
	Status Optional
	Datatype
Member of	model.phrase.basic.norefs
Contained by	EAD: abstract archref bibref creation descrules dimensions emph entry event extrefloc item label langmaterial langusage materialspec origination p physdesc physfacet physloc ref refloc repository subtitle titleproper unitdate unitid unittitle
May contain	Character data only
Note	See also related element Expansion <expan>.
Example	<note xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <abbr expan="Autograph Letter Signed">ALS</abbr> </note>
Content model	<content> </content>

One map is dated 1878 and 1879 by Egan. The other maps
are undated and unsigned but it is likely that he drew
them during these years. These maps primarily depict
subdivisions of non-rancho tracts of land occupying what
is now Orange County, with the addition of some
topographical details.
 </did>
</archdesc>

Content model

<content>
</content>

**Schema
Declaration**   element abstract
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.langcode.attributes,
  att.labeled.attributes,
  (text | model.phrase.basic)*
}

\<accessrestrict\>

\<accessrestrict\> (Conditions Governing Access) Information about conditions that affect the availability of the materials being described. May indicate the need for an appointment or the nature of restrictions imposed by the donor, legal statute, repository, or other agency. May also indicate the lack of restrictions.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.typed (@*type*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: accessrestrict archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict address blockquote chronlist head legalstatus list note p table
Note	Do not confuse with Conditions Governing Use <userestrict>, which designates information about limitations on the use of the described materials after access has been granted.In EAD Version 1.0 <accessrestrict> was a subelement of Administrative Information <admininfo>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp> element can be used to replace <admininfo> where it has been used as a wrapper when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002. The <accessrestrict> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.4.1 and MARC field 506.
Example	<accessrestrict xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> There are no access restrictions on this collection. </accessrestrict>
Example	<accessrestrict xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <p>University records are public records and once fully

processed are generally open to research use. Records that contain personally identifiable information will be closed to protect individual privacy. The closure of university records is subject to compliance with applicable laws.</p>
</accessrestrict>

Example	<p xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	<c02 level="file">
	<did>
	<container type="box" label="Box">104 </container>
	<container type="folder"
	label="Folder(s)">6578-6579 </container>
	<unittitle>
	<title render="italic">Technics and
	Civilization</title> (<title render="italic">Form
	and Personality</title> or <title render="italic">Form and Civilization</title>) <
	/unittitle>
	<unitdate type="inclusive"
	normal="1931/1933">1931-1933</unitdate>
	</did>
	<scopecontent>
	Draft fragments.
	</scopecontent>
	<accessrestrict>
	<p>Only the photocopies (housed in Box 105) of these
	fragile materials may be used.</p>
	</accessrestrict>
	</c02>
	</p>

Content model

<content>
</content>

**Schema
Declaration**   element accessrestrict
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  head?,
  (model.blocks | legalstatus | accessrestrict)+
}

<accruals>

<accruals> (Accruals) Information about anticipated additions to the materials being described.
Can indicate quantity and frequency. Can also be used to indicate that no additions are expected.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: accruals archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp
May contain	EAD: accruals address blockquote chronlist head list note p table
Note	In EAD Version 1.0 <accruals> was a subelement of Administrative Information

<adminfo>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp> element can be used to replace <adminfo> where it has been used as a wrapper when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002.The <accruals> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.3.3 and MARC field 584.

Example   <accruals xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <p>No further materials are expected for this collection.</p>
</accruals>

Example   <accruals xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <p>Noncurrent additions to this Record Group are transferred
   from the Development Department annually at the end of the
   fiscal year in June.</p>
</accruals>

Content model
            <content>
            </content>

**Schema
Declaration**   element accruals
            {
              att.EADGlobal.attributes,
              head?,
              (model.blocks | accruals)+
            }

<acqinfo>

<acqinfo> (Acquisition Information) The immediate source of the materials being described and the circumstances under which they were received. Includes donations, transfers, purchases, and deposits.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: acqinfo archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 custodhist descgrp
May contain	EAD: acqinfo address blockquote chronlist head list note p table
Note	After opening a Paragraph <p> within <acqinfo>, optional subelements may be used to tag separately such common acquisition information as the name of the source, e.g., <persname> or <corpname>; the <date> the materials were received; or the accession number <num> assigned to them. The <address> element could be used to document the address of the source, and the *audience* attribute could be set to "internal," if the address information should only be available to authorized staff. Note that the accession number may also serve as the <unitid> and be encoded as such within a <did>.For detailed information about items acquired and then subsequently alienated from the materials being described, the Separated Material <separatedmaterial> element can be used. It designates items related by provenance that have been physically removed from the materials being described. The Custodial History <custodhist> element can be used for information about the chain of ownership before the materials reached the immediate source of

acquisition.

In EAD Version 1.0 <acqinfo> was a subelement of Administrative Information <admininfo>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp> element can be used to replace <admininfo> where it has been used as a wrapper when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002.

The <acqinfo> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.2.4 and MARC field 541.

Example   <acqinfo xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <p>Transfer from <corpname>National Park Service, </corpname>
  <date type="accession">1945</date>. Accession number <num type="accession" >45.22</num>.</p>
</acqinfo>

Example   <acqinfo xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <p>Source unknown. Originally deposited in University Library,
   transferred to Department of Palaeography, <date normal="19580424">24 April 1 958</date>.</p>
</acqinfo>

Content model
        <content>
        </content>

Schema Declaration   element acqinfo
        {
          att.EADGlobal.attributes,
          head?,
          (model.blocks | acqinfo)+
        }

<address>

<address> (Address) A generic element for information about the place where someone or something is located and may be reached. Examples include a postal address for a repository, or the electronic mail address and phone number of the party granting publication permission.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Member of   model.inter.noquote
Contained by EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist blockquote controlaccess custodhist daodesc descgrp div dsc dscgroup entry event extrefloc index item note odd originalsloc otherfindaid p phystech prefercite processinfo publicationstmt ref refloc relatedmaterial repository scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict
May contain   EAD: addressline
Note   Consider using an entity reference to store address information that occurs in many finding aids, as it is easier to update the information when located in a single, shared file. The entity reference can contain both the EAD elements and their content. A style sheet can also be used to supply this kind of information.
Example   <publicationstmt xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
                   <publisher>The Bancroft Library.</publisher>

```
          <address>
           <addressline>University of California,
             Berkeley.</addressline>
           <addressline>Berkeley, California 94720-6000</addressline>
           <addressline>Phone: 510/642-6481</addressline>
           <addressline>Fax: 510/642-7589</addressline>
           <addressline>Email:
             bancref@library.berkeley.edu</addressline>
          </address>
         </publicationstmt>
```

Content model	```<content></content>```
Schema Declaration	element address { att.EADGlobal.attributes, addressline+ }

\<addressline\>

\<addressline\> (Address Line) A generic element for one line of a postal or other address. May be repeated as many times as necessary to enter all available lines of an address.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: address
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr

Example	```<publicationstmt xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">```
	``` <publisher>Special Collections and Archives</publisher>```
	``` <address>```
	``` <addressline>The UCI Libraries</addressline>```
	``` <addressline>P.O. Box 19557</addressline>```
	``` <addressline>University of California</addressline>```
	``` <addressline>Irvine, California 92623-9557</addressline>```
	``` <addressline>Phone: (949) 824-7227</addressline>```
	``` <addressline>Fax: (949) 824-2472</addressline>```
	``` <addressline>Email: spcoll@uci.edu</addressline>```
	``` <addressline>URL:http://www.lib.uci.edu/rrsc/speccoll.html</addressline>```
	``` </address>```
	``` <date>© 2000</date>```
	``` The Regents of the University of California. All rights```
	``` reserved. ```
	```</publicationstmt>```

Content model	```<content></content>```
Schema Declaration	element addressline { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.phrase.bare)* }

\<altformavail\>

\<altformavail\> (Alternative Form Available) Information about copies of the materials being described, including the type of alternative form, significant control numbers, location, and source

for ordering if applicable. The additional formats are typically microforms, photocopies, or digital reproductions.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: altformavail archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp
May contain	EAD: address altformavail blockquote chronlist head list note p table
Note	Do not confuse with Location of Originals <originalsloc>, which is used to encode information about the existence, location, and availability of originals where the unit described consists of copies.In EAD Version 1.0 <altformavail> was a subelement of Administrative Information <admininfo>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp> element can be used to replace <admininfo> where it has been used as a wrapper when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002. The <altformavail> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.5.2 and MARC field 530.

Example	<altformavail xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	  This collection has been microfilmed and is available on
	   three reels MF1993-034:1 to MF1993-034:3.
	  Researchers interested in purchasing microfilm copies should
	   contact the repository.
	</altformavail>

Example	<altformavail xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <head>Alternate Form of Material</head> Microfilm copy available (<num type="microfilm reel"> M-5030/1</num>). </altformavail>

Example	<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">
	 <did>
	  <container type="reel"
	  label="Film Storage">1</container>
	  <unittitle>
	   <title render="italic">The Man Who Hated
	     Children</title>
	  </unittitle>
	  <unitdate normal="1972">1972</unitdate>
	  <physdesc>16 mm. film</physdesc>
	 </did>
	 <altformavail>
	   A VHS Videocassette version is available for viewing.
	    Video tape is located in Video Storage.
	 </altformavail>
	</c02>

Schematron	If the element <altformavail> is not empty, you COULD try to identify if the originals are present in the EHRI portal and make a link between the two descriptions. <s:rule context="ead:altformavail/ead:p"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="not(normalize-space(.))"> If the element altformavail is not empty, you COULD try to identify if the originals are present in the EHRI portal and make a link between the two descriptions</s:assert> </s:rule>

Content model	<content/>

Schema Declaration	element altformavail

```
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  head?,
  ( model.blocks | altformavail )+
}
```

<appraisal>

<appraisal> (Appraisal Information) Information about the process of determining the archival value and thus the disposition of records based upon their current administrative, legal, and fiscal use; their evidential, intrinsic, and informational value; their arrangement and condition; and their relationship to other records.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: appraisal archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp
May contain	EAD: address appraisal blockquote chronlist head list note p table
Note	In EAD Version 1.0 <appraisal> was a subelement of Administrative Information <admininfo>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp> element can be used to replace <admininfo> where it has been used as a wrapper when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002.The <appraisal> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.3.2 and MARC field 583.
Example	<appraisal xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> The records of the Mid-Ocean Dynamics Experiment came to the Institute Archives in two accessions in 1980 and 1982. During processing the collection was reduced from fifteen cubic feet to four by discarding duplicate materials, financial records, and publications not authored by MODE participants. Forty charts and six inches of raw data presented the primary appraisal issues. The raw data consisted of bulletins and reports referring to float positions, moorings, isotherms, geostrophic velocity calculations, ships' summaries, and work proposed and work carried out during the MODE-I experiment. As this raw data was recapitulated in weekly <title render="underline">MODE Hot Line Bulletins</title>, only a sampling was retained in the collection. Also discarded were ten charts for which there were no descriptions of indicated data points, nor were dates or test site locations provided. Six inches of materials pertaining to the POLYMODE project, 1973-1980, were added to the Institute Archives POLYMODE collection.

```
<p>The appraisal of this collection was carried out in
   consultation with Robert Heinmiller, a research associate at
   Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution during MODE.</p>
</appraisal>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element appraisal
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   head?,
   ( model.blocks | appraisal )+
}
```

**** (Arc) Specifies the rules for traversal among the participating resources in an extended link. Arc uses the attributes to and from to define the traversal between named pairs of resources.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*)
Member of	model.extended.els
Contained by	EAD: daogrp linkgrp
May contain	Empty element
Note	While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink/.
Example	`<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">`

```
<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Photographs of John Smith and family
    members</unittitle>
  <unitdate type="inclusive"
   normal="1895/1928">1895-1928</unitdate>
  <daogrp linktype="extended">
   <daodesc>
    <p>Sample digitized image from this file: John Smith
       graduation portrait, <date normal="18950528">28
         May 1895</date>.</p>
   </daodesc>
   <resource linktype="resource"
    label="start"/>
   <daoloc entityref="f0042_1tmb"
    linktype="locator" label="thumb"/>
   <daoloc entityref="f0042_1ref"
    linktype="locator" label="reference"/>
   <arc linktype="arc" show="embed"
    actuate="onload" from="start" to="thumb"/>
   <arc linktype="arc" show="new"
```

```
                actuate="onrequest" from="thumb" to="reference"/>
              </daogrp>
             </did>
            </c02>
```

Content model

```
            <content>
            </content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element arc { att.xlink.attributes, empty }

\<archdesc>

\<archdesc> (Archival Description) A wrapper element for the bulk of an EAD document instance, which describes the content, context, and extent of a body of archival materials, including administrative and supplemental information that facilitates use of the materials. Information is organized in unfolding, hierarchical levels that allow for a descriptive overview of the whole to be followed by more detailed views of the parts, designated by the element Description of Subordinate Components \<dsc> . Data elements available at the \<archdesc> level are repeated at the various component levels within \<dsc>, and information is inherited from one hierarchical level to the next.

Module   EAD

Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
                  att.relatedencoding (*@relatedencoding*) att.desc.c (level, *@otherlevel*)
                  level   The hierarchical level of the materials being described by the element.

	Derived from	att.desc.c
	Status	*Required*
	Schematron	If the attribute *level* has the value 'otherlevel', an attribute *otherlevel* MUST be added <s:rule context="ead:ead"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="not(@level = 'otherlevel') or (@otherlevel and not(@otherlevel = ''))">If the attribute level has the value 'otherlevel', an attribute otherlevel MUST be added</s:assert> </s:rule>
	Schematron	The <archdesc> element can have for *level* the value 'fonds', not the subcomponents, <c01> to <c06> <s:rule context="ead:ead"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="not(@level = 'fonds') or name(.) = 'archdesc'">The archdesc can have for level the value 'fonds", not the subcomponents.</s:assert> </s:rule>
	Schematron	A component with *level*="recordgrp" SHOULD be a child of another component with *level*="recordgrp" <s:rule context="ead:ead"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="not(@level = 'recordgrp') or (parent::*[@level = 'recordgrp'] or (name(.) = 'archdesc') or (name(.) = 'c01') and ancestor::*[@level = 'recordgrp'])">recordgrp SHOULD be a child of another recordgrp</s:assert> </s:rule>
	Schematron	A component with *level*="subgrp" SHOULD be a child of another component with *level*="subgrp" or "recordgrp" <s:rule context="ead:ead"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="not(@level = 'subgrp') or ((parent::*[@level = 'recordgrp' or @level = 'subgrp']) or (name(.) = 'c01') and

ancestor::*[@level = 'recordgrp'])">subgrp SHOULD be a child of another subgrp or a recordgrp</s:assert>
</s:rule>

Schematron	A component with *level*="subseries" SHOULD be a child of another component with *level*="subseries" or "series" <s:rule context="ead:ead"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="not(@level = 'subseries') or parent::*[@level = 'subseries' or @level = 'series']">subseries SHOULD be a child of another subseries or a series</s:assert> </s:rule>
Datatype	
Legal values are:	**class**
	collection
	fonds
	item
	otherlevel
	recordgrp
	series
	subfonds
	subgrp
	subseries
	file

type	can be used to categorize the finding aid as an inventory, register, or other format.	
	Derived from	att.typed
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	

Contained by	EAD: ead
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial runner scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict
Note	The Descriptive Identification <did> element is required to appear in <archdesc> before presenting more detailed descriptions in <bioghist>, <scopecontent>, and <dsc>, in order to provide first a basic description of the archival materials.
Schematron	This constraint exists only for technical reasons. Without the declaration of the EAD namespace, the transformation in relaxNG wouldn't work. <s:ns prefix="ead" uri="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"/>
Schematron	This constraint exists only for technical reasons. Without the declaration of the TEI namespace, the transformation in relaxNG wouldn't work. <s:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>

Schematron	<archdesc> MUST have a *level* attribute. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="@level">archdesc MUST have a level-attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The value of the <archdesc> *level* attribute SHOULD be limited to four values: <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="@level = 'fonds' or @level = 'recordGrp' or @level = 'collection' or @level='otherlevel'">The value of the archdesc level attribute SHOULD be 'fonds', 'recordGrp', 'collection' ot 'otherlevel'.</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	<archdesc>should contain a non-empty <origination> element. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="ead:did/ead:origination and normalize-space(ead:did/ead:origination)">archdesc SHOULD have a non-empty origination</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	If <archdesc> should contain a non-empty <processinfo> element. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="normalize-space(ead:processinfo)">archdesc-processinfo SHOULD not be empty</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The <processinfo> element SHOULD contain a <date> element as descendant. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="normalize-space(ead:processinfo/ead:p/ead:date)">archdesc-processinfo SHOULD have a non empty date</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The <archdesc> element COULD contain a <langmaterial> element. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:did/ead:langmaterial">archdesc COULD have a langmaterial</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The <archdesc> element COULD contain a <custodhist> element. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:custodhist">archdesc COULD have a custodhist</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The <archdesc> element COULD contain a <otherfindaid> element. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:otherfindaid">archdesc COULD have an otherfindaid</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The <archdesc> element COULD contain a <originalsloc> element. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:originalsloc">archdesc COULD have an originalsloc</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The <archdesc> element COULD contain a <altformavail> element. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:altformavail">archdesc COULD have an altformavail</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The <archdesc> element COULD contain a element. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:bibliography">archdesc COULD have a bibliography</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The <archdesc> element COULD contain a <odd> element <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:odd">archdesc COULD have an odd</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The <archdesc> element COULD contain a <note> element. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:note">archdesc COULD have a note</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The <archdesc> element COULD contain a <controlaccess> element. <s:rule context="ead:archdesc"> <s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:controlaccess">archdesc COULD have a controlaccess</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	A <scopecontent> element SHOULD be present in the description at least in

<archdesc>, if not in the <c> elements.
<s:rule context="ead:archdesc" role="SHOULD"> <s:assert test="ead:scopecontent
or ead:dsc/ead:c01/descendant-or-self::ead:scopecontent">a scopecontent element
SHOULD be present at least in archdesc if not in the c elements</s:assert>
</s:rule>

Content model

Schema Declaration   element archdesc
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.relatedencoding.attributes,
  att.desc.c.attribute.otherlevel,
  attribute level
  {
    "class"
  | "collection"
  | "fonds"
  | "item"
  | "otherlevel"
  | "recordgrp"
  | "series"
  | "subfonds"
  | "subgrp"
  | "subseries"
  | "file"
  }
  >>
  tei:constraintSpec
  [
    ident = "otherlevel"
    scheme = "isoschematron"
    type = "EHRI"
    mode = "add"
    "If the attribute "
    "level"
    """ has the value 'otherlevel', an attribute """
    "otherlevel"
    " MUST be added"
    """"If the attribute level has the value 'otherlevel', an attribute otherlevel MUST be a
dded""""
  ]
  >>
  tei:constraintSpec
  [
    ident = "levelFonds"
    scheme = "isoschematron"
    type = "EHRI"
    mode = "add"
    "The "
    "<archdesc>"

" element can have for "
"level"
""" the value 'fonds', not the subcomponents, """
"<c01>"
" to "
"<c06>"
"""The archdesc can have for level the value 'fonds', not the subcomponents."""
]
>>
tei:constraintSpec
[
  ident = "recordgrplevel"
  scheme = "isoschematron"
  type = "EHRI"
  mode = "add"
  "A component with "
  "level"
  """="recordgrp" SHOULD be a child of another component with """
  "level"
  """="recordgrp""""
  "recordgrp SHOULD be a child of another recordgrp"
]
>>
tei:constraintSpec
[
  ident = "subgrpLevel"
  scheme = "isoschematron"
  type = "EHRI"
  mode = "add"
  "A component with "
  "level"
  """="subgrp" SHOULD be a child of another component with """
  "level"
  """="subgrp" or "recordgrp""""
  "subgrp SHOULD be a child of another subgrp or a recordgrp"
]
>>
tei:constraintSpec
[
  ident = "subseriesLevel"
  scheme = "isoschematron"
  type = "EHRI"
  mode = "add"
  "A component with "
  "level"
  """="subseries" SHOULD be a child of another component with """
  "level"
  """="subseries" or "series""""
  "subseries SHOULD be a child of another subseries or a series"
],
attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
(runner*, did, model.desc.full*)

}

<archdescgrp>

<archdescgrp> (Archival Description Group) A wrapper element used only within <eadgrp> in the EAD Group Document Type Definition. The <archdescgrp> summarizes the content, context, and extent of the archival materials described in separate EAD documents bundled within the <dscgrp> subelement. The <archdescgrp> may contain all data elements available in <archdesc>, except for <dsc>; the <dscgrp> subelement fills the role of <dsc>. As with <archdesc>, a Descriptive Identification <did> element is required to appear in <archdescgrp> before presenting more detailed descriptions in such elements as <bioghist>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.relatedencoding (*@relatedencoding*) att.desc.c (*@level*, *@otherlevel*)
Contained by	—
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial runner scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict
Note	See also the <eadgrp> element.
Content model	<content> </content>

Schema Declaration	element archdescgrp { att.EADGlobal.attributes, att.relatedencoding.attributes, att.desc.c.attributes, (runner*, did, model.desc.full*, dscgrp) }

<archref>

<archref> (Archival Reference) A reference element that provides a citation and/or an electronic link to separately described archival materials of special interest. Examples of such materials include a record group and one of its large series (which might have separate EAD-encoded finding aids) and a general reference to a collection with similar content.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.roled (*@role*) att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*)
Member of	model.refs
Contained by	EAD: abstract bibliography bibref creation descrules dimensions emph entry event extref item label langmaterial langusage materialspec origination otherfindaid p physdesc physfacet physloc ref relatedmaterial repository separatedmaterial unitdate unitid unittitle
May contain	EAD: abbr abstract bibref container dao daogrp emph expan extptr extref langmaterial lb materialspec note origination physdesc physloc ptr ref repository title unitdate unitid unittitle
Note	The <archref> element can be helpful in several situations. It can be used, with the

HREF or ENTITYREF attribute, for linking to another EAD instance. The <archref> element can also be used to cite archival materials within a , <relatedmaterial>, or <separatedmaterial> element. The <archref> may contain just text or some of the content-specific elements such as <origination>, <repository>, and <unittitle> to identify the different kinds of information in a citation.Do not confuse <archref> with the Bibliographic Reference <bibref> element, which is used to cite works that are published entities or individual items that are not usefully designated as archival materials.

While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.

Example

```
<relatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <head>Related Collections</head>
 <archref>
  <unitid>BANC PIC 19xx.055--ffALB</unitid>,
 <unittitle>
   <title>Photographs Taken During the U.S.
      Geological Surveys West of the 100th Meridian,
      1871-1873</title>, by Timothy H. O'Sullivan and
    William Bell</unittitle>
 </archref>
 <archref>
  <unitid>BANC PIC 19xx.089--STER</unitid>,
 <unittitle>
   <title>Stereoviews of the U.S.
      Geographical Survey Expedition West of the 100th
      Meridian of 1871</title>, by Timothy H.
    O'Sullivan</unittitle>
 </archref>
 <archref>
  <unitid>BANC PIC 19xx.273--PIC</unitid>,
 <unittitle>Geographical Surveys West of the 100th
     Meridian (U.S.). <title>New Mexico Photographs from the
      1873 Geographical Survey West of the 100th
      Meridian</title>
  </unittitle>
 </archref>
 <archref>
  <unitid>BANC PIC 1905.17116-.17119--STER</unitid>,
 <unittitle>
   <title>Western Survey Expeditions of
      1871, 1872, 1873, and 1874 </title>, by Timothy H.
    O'Sullivan and William Bell</unittitle>
 </archref>
</relatedmaterial>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema

Declaration   element archref
                   {
                     att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                     att.roled.attributes,
                     att.xlink.attributes,
                     (
                       text
                      | model.phrase.basic.norefs
                      | bibref
                      | ref
                      | title
                      | extref
                      | model.did
)*
                   }

\<arrangement\>

\<arrangement\> (Arrangement) Information on how the described materials have been subdivided into smaller units, e.g., record groups into series, identifying the logical or physical groupings within a hierarchical structure. Can also be used to express the filing sequence of the described materials, such as the principle characteristics of the internal structure, or the physical or logical ordering of materials, including alphabetical, chronological, geographical, office of origin, and other schemes. Identifying logical groupings and the arrangement pattern may enhance retrieval by researchers.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp arrangement c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp scopecontent
May contain	EAD: address arrangement blockquote chronlist head list note p table
Note	The \<arrangement\> element may occur within \<archdesc\> and \<c\> or as a subelement of \<scopecontent\>.The \<arrangement\> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.3.4 and MARC field 351. The ENCODINGANALOG attribute may be used to differentiate between the 351 subfield a (organization) and subfield b (arrangement).
Example	\<arrangement xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\> \<head\>Arrangement of the Collection\</head\> \<p\>The filing system for the Braman Collection has been kept substantially in its original form. That is, original folders and their titles have been retained. The processor devised the basic organization scheme for the collection and, where necessary, reorganized the papers within the various component groups.\</p\> \</arrangement\>
Example	\<c01 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="series"\> \<did\> \<unittitle\>Research files\</unittitle\> \<unitdate type="inclusive" normal="1887/1995"\>1887-1995\</unitdate\> \<physdesc\> \<extent\>3.5 linear feet (4 boxes)\</extent\>

```
    </physdesc>
   </did>
   <scopecontent>
    <p>This series consists of newspaper clippings and research
       notes of Fred Reed, pertaining to the Champlain
       Transportation Company, its vessels, and the vessels'
       crew members. Several of the folders of chronological
       clippings include subjects, such as the move of the
       Ticonderoga (1954-1955) and the sale of the Champlain
       Transportation Company (1966). A number of clippings
       under "Persons" are obituaries. Two folders under the
       subseries "Notes" contain handwritten notes by Fred Reed
       broadly pertaining to the history of the Champlain
       Transportation Company, including a chronology, a list
       of crew members, and information about the Company's
       vessels.</p>
    <arrangement>
     <p>Organized into three subseries: <list type="simple">
      <item>Clippings--chronological</item>
      <item>Clippings--persons</item>
      <item>Notes</item>
     </list>
    </p>
    <p>"Clippings-persons" is arranged alphabetically by
        surname, and "Notes" alphabetically by subject.</p>
    </arrangement>
   </scopecontent>
  </c01>
```

Example	```<c03 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">
	 <did>
	  <unittitle id="bruce.A.2.3">Letters from various
	     correspondents to Craufurd Bruce</unittitle>
	  <unitdate normal="1807/1819">1807-19</unitdate>
	  <unitid>MS. Eng. c. 5746</unitid>
	  <physdesc>
	   <extent>126 leaves</extent>
	  </physdesc>
	 </did>
	 <arrangement>
	   Alphabetical, Grey - Peterkin
	 </arrangement>
	 <scopecontent>
	   Mainly relating to Michael Bruce, with drafts of a few
	     letters from Craufurd Bruce.
	 </scopecontent>
	</c03>```

Content model	```<content></content>```
Schema Declaration	element arrangement

```
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  head?,
  ( model.blocks | arrangement )+
}
```

<author>

<author> (Author) Name(s) of institution(s) or individual(s) responsible for compiling the intellectual content of the finding aid. May include a brief statement indicating the nature of the responsibility, for example, archivist, collections processor, or records manager. Because acknowledgment of such individuals or institutions often appears on the title page of a finding aid, the <author> element is available in both the required <titlestmt> portion of the <eadheader> and the optional <titlepage> element in <frontmatter>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: titlepage titlestmt
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	Use the <creation> element found under <profiledesc> to designate the encoder of the finding aid. Use the <persname> or <corpname> element with the ROLE attribute to designate the author in a Bibliographic Reference <bibref> citation. Use the <origination> element to designate the compiler, collector, or creator of the materials being described.
Example	<filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <titlestmt> <titleproper>Register of the Rhea Higbee Wakeling Collection</titleproper> <author>The print and machine readable finding aids for this collection were created by the Special Collections staff, Gerald R. Sherratt Library.</author> </titlestmt> </filedesc>
Example	<frontmatter xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <titlepage> <titleproper>Indians Overseas</titleproper> <subtitle>A guide to source materials in the India Office Records for the study of Indian emigration, 1830-1950</subtitle> <author>Timothy N. Thomas</author> <publisher>THE BRITISH LIBRARY<extptr entityref="plachold"/> </publisher> <date>1985</date> </titlepage> </frontmatter>
Content model	
	<content> </content>
Schema Declaration	element author { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.phrase.bare)* }

\<bibliography\>

\<bibliography\> (Bibliography) Citations to works that are based on, about, or of special value when using the materials being described, or works in which a citation to or brief description of the materials is available. The works could be books, articles, television programs, unpublished reports, web sites, or other forms of information. The \<bibliography\> may be a simple \<list\>, a list of both Bibliographic References \<bibref\> and Archival References \<archref\>, or a series of Paragraphs \<p\>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp bibliography c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp
May contain	EAD: address archref bibliography bibref blockquote chronlist extref head linkgrp list note p ref subtitle table title
Note	The \<bibref\> element may be used to designate single citations within Paragraphs \<p\> without opening the \<bibliography\> element.In EAD Version 1.0 \<bibliography\> was a subelement of Adjunct Descriptive Data \<add\>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group \<descgrp\> element, which can group any of the \<did\>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components \<dsc\>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The \<descgrp\> element can be used to replace \<add\> when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002.
The \<bibliography\> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.5.4 and MARC fields 510 and 581.
Example	\
\<head\>Bibliography\</head\>
\<p\>Sources consulted by John Kobler.\</p\>
\<bibliography\>
\<head\>Monographs\</head\>
\<bibref\>
\<title render="italic"\>Affiches americaines\</title\>.
San Domingo: Imprimerie royale du Cap, 1782. Nos. 30,
35.\</bibref\>
\<bibref\>Ardouin, Charles Nicholas Celigny. \<title render="italic"\>Essais sur l' histoire
d'Haiti\</title\>. Port-au-Prince, 1865.\</bibref\>
\<bibref\>Bastien, Remy. \<title render="italic"\>Anthologie du
folklore haitien\</title\>, \<title render="doublequote"\>Proverbes\</title\>. Mexico,
1946. pp.83-91.\</bibref\>
\<bibref\>Bellegarde, Dantes. \<title render="italic"\> Dessalines a parle\</title\>. Port-au-Prince, 1948.
Chap. IV: pp. 47-54.\</bibref\>
\</bibliography\>
\<bibliography\>
\<head\>Serial publications\</head\> . . . \</bibliography\>
\</bibliography\>
Content model	\<content\>
\</content\>

Schema Declaration	element bibliography
	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  (head?, (model.blocks | model.refs | bibliography)+)
	}

\<bibref\>

\<bibref\> (Bibliographic Reference) A reference element that provides a citation and/or electronic link for a published work such as a book, article, dissertation, motion picture, or sound recording. The \<bibref\> may contain just text or some of the content-specific elements such as \<title\>, \<imprint\>, or \<edition\>, although the latter two elements are unlikely to be used for unpublished works.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.roled (*@role*) att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*)
Member of	model.refs
Contained by	EAD: abstract archref bibliography creation descrules dimensions emph entry event extref item label langmaterial langusage materialspec origination otherfindaid p physdesc physfacet physloc ref relatedmaterial repository separatedmaterial unitdate unitid unittitle
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibseries corpname edition emph expan extptr extref famname imprint lb name num persname ptr ref title
Note	A list of \<bibref\>s may be gathered into a \<bibliography\>. A single \<bibref\> may be part of a Paragraph \<p\>. Use the HREF or ENTITYREF attribute to point to an electronic bibliographic work.Use the more specific \<archref\> element to cite or link to separately described archival materials. Do not confuse with the Reference \<ref\> element, which is an internal link from one place in a finding aid to another place in the same finding aid. While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.

Example	\<p xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\>The Archibald MacLeish Papers are described in \<bibref\>
	  \<title render="italic"\>Library of Congress Acquisitions:
	    Manuscript Division, 1982, \</title\> p. 29. \</bibref\>
	\</p\>

Example	\
	 \<head\>Bibliography\</head\>
	 \<p\>Sources consulted by John Kobler.\</p\>
	 \<bibref\>
	  \<title render="italic"\>Affiches americaines\</title\>. San
	  Domingo: Imprimerie royale du Cap, 1782. Nos. 30,
	  35.\</bibref\>
	 \<bibref\>Ardouin, Charles Nicholas Celigny. \<title render="italic"\>Essais sur l'histoire d'Haiti\</title\>.
	  Port-au-Prince, 1865.\</bibref\>

```
        <bibref>Bastien, Remy. <title render="italic">Anthologie du
          folklore haitien</title>, <title render="doublequote"> Proverbes</title>. Mexi
co, 1946. pp.83-91.</bibref>
         <bibref>Bellegarde, Dantes. <title render="italic">Dessalines a
           parle</title>. Port-au-Prince, 1948. Chap. IV: pp.
          47-54.</bibref> . . . </bibliography>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema
Declaration
```
element bibref
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.roled.attributes,
  att.xlink.attributes,
  (
     text
   | model.phrase.basic.norefs
   | edition
   | imprint
   | name
   | num
   | bibseries
   | ref
   | title
   | famname
   | persname
   | corpname
   | extref
   | archref
  )*
}
```

<bibseries>

<bibseries> (Bibliographic Series) Information about the published series in which a book, encoded finding aid, or other published work has appeared. Refers to monographic series only. Not to be used for archival series.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: bibref titlepage unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb num ptr title
Example	<frontmatter xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	<titlepage>
	<bibseries>Guides to Special Collections in the Music
	Division of the Library of Congress</bibseries>
	<titleproper>Irving Fine Collection</titleproper>
	</titlepage>
	</frontmatter>
Example	
	<head>Selected Bibliography of History of the Harvard University

```
                Department of Physics</head>
              <bibref>
               <persname>Morton, Charles</persname>. <title>Compendium
                 Physicae</title>. <imprint> [<geogname>Boston
               </geogname>: <publisher>Colonial Society of
                 Massachusetts, </publisher>
               <date normal="1940">1940</date>].</imprint>
               <bibseries>Colonial Society of Massachusetts. Publications ;
               <num>v. 33</num>.</bibseries>
              </bibref>
            </bibliography>
```

Content model

```
            <content>
            </content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**

```
            element bibseries
            {
              att.EADGlobal.attributes,
              ( text | model.phrase.bare | title | num )*
            }
```

<bioghist>

<bioghist> (Biography or History) A concise essay or chronology that places the archival materials in context by providing information about their creator(s). Includes significant information about the life of an individual or family, or the administrative history of a corporate body. The <bioghist> may contain just text in a series of Paragraphs <p>, and/or a Chronology List <chronlist> that matches dates and date ranges with associated events. Additional <bioghist> elements may be nested inside one another when a complex body of materials, such as a collection of family papers, is being described, and separately headed sections are desired. The <bioghist> element may also be nested to designate a portion of the essay or chronology that might be extracted as a MARC 545 subfield.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp bioghist c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp
May contain	EAD: address bioghist blockquote chronlist dao daogrp head list note p table
Note	Many elements, such as <bioghist> are recursive (i.e., the elements are available within themselves) to facilitate the use of multiple headings with subdivided descriptions for complex collections, and to enable EAD markup to be used for a variety of output. In Example 1 below, <bioghist> is repeated within itself to enable the extraction of a brief biographical note for a MARC record.The <bioghist> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.2.2 and MARC field 545.
Example	<bioghist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	<head>Administrative History</head>
	<bioghist encodinganalog="545$a">
	<p id="PRO123">In October 1964 the incoming Labour
	government created new office of Secretary of State for
	Economic Affairs (combined with First Secretary of

State) and set up the Department of Economic Affairs under the Ministers of the Crown Act 1964 to carry primary responsibility for long term economic planning.</p>
  </bioghist>
  <p>Under the Act the posts of Economic Secretary to the Treasury and Secretary of State for Industry, Trade and Regional Development were abolished.</p>
  <p>George Brown was appointed as First Secretary of State and Secretary of</p>
  <p>Composition of DEA: most of Treasury's National Economy Group (excluding the short term forecasting team); economic planning staff from the National Economic Development Office (NEDO); the regional policy divisions from the Board of Trade; a team of industrial experts.</p>
  <p>DEA charged with duty of formulating, with both sides of industry, a National Plan (published in September 1965), co-ordinating the work of other departments in implementing policies of economic growth, particularly in the fields of industry, the regions, and prices and incomes.</p> . . .
</bioghist>

Example

```
<bioghist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <head>Chronology</head>
 <chronlist>
  <chronitem>
   <date normal="18401012">1840</date>
   <event>Born Helena Opid in Krakow, Poland on October
      12th.</event>
  </chronitem>
  <chronitem>
   <date normal="1861">1861</date>
   <event>Made stage debut as Helena Modrzejewska in
      charity fair production of <title>The White
       Camellia</title>, in Bochnia, Poland.</event>
  </chronitem> . . . <chronitem>
   <date normal="19090409">1909</date>
   <event>Died April 8th at her home on Bay Island. Funeral
      services held at St. Vibiana's Cathedral in Los
      Angeles, and Modjeska was later buried in her native
      Krakow.</event>
  </chronitem>
 </chronlist>
</bioghist>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element bioghist
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   head?,
```

```
    ( model.blocks | bioghist | dao | daogrp )+
}
```

<blockquote>

<blockquote> (Block Quote) A formatting element that designates an extended quotation. The quotation is set off from the text by spacing or other typographic distinction.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.inter
Contained by	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist controlaccess custodhist daodesc descgrp div dsc dscgroup event extrefloc index item note odd originalsloc otherfindaid p phystech prefercite processinfo ref refloc relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict
May contain	EAD: address chronlist list note p table
Note	Use the Emphasis <emph> element, not <blockquote>, to tag words that are set off with quotations for emphasis or as a small quoted phrase that occurs, "as these words do," in the line of text.
Example	<bioghist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <head>Administrative History</head> The Brewster presidential administration's primary objective was to raise academic standards comprehensively throughout Yale University. This required the substantial revision of certain existing policies and disciplines, as well as the development of new programs, schools, and departments. President Brewster began this process in the 1960s by significantly increasing the size of the faculty and by actively recruiting renowned non-Yale scholars to fill the positions. According to Brewster, previous Yale administrations tended to overlook high caliber academicians who graduated and specialized outside the university. . . . As the size of the Yale faculty increased, Brewster's new admissions policies caused the make up of the undergraduate body to shift. By the early 1960s, most undergraduates had prepared at private schools, and many were sons of Yale alumni. As with the faculty, Brewster felt that Yale was consistently overlooking some of the best intellectual student talent necessary to maintain the highest levels of academic excellence. In a 1965 speech to alumni, Brewster summarized his administration's revised recruitment policy by stating that Yale would only seek students <blockquote> whose capacity for intellectual achievement is outstanding and who also have the motivation to put their intellectual capacities to creatively influential use, in thought, in art, in science, or in the exercise of public or private or professional responsibility. </blockquote> . . . </bioghist>

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element blockquote { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (model.inter.noquote | p)+ }

<c>

<c> (Component (Unnumbered)) A wrapper element that designates a subordinate part of the materials being described. A Component <c> provides information about the content, context, and extent of a subordinate body of materials. It is always nested within a Description of Subordinate Components <dsc> and often within another <c> element. Each <c> element identifies an intellectually logical section of the described materials. The physical filing separations between components do not always coincide with the intellectual separations. For example, a <c> that designates dramatic works might end in the same box in which the next <c> begins with short stories. Also, not every <c> directly corresponds to a folder or other physical entity. Some <c> elements simply represent a stage within a hierarchical description.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (*@level*, *@otherlevel*)
Contained by	EAD: c dsc
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict
Note	Components may be subdivided into smaller and smaller components and may eventually reach the level of a single item. For example, the components of a collection may be series, components of series may be subseries, components of subseries may be files, and components of files may be items. A component may be either an unnumbered <c> or a numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.Use the LEVEL attribute to identify the descriptive character of the component, for example, "series," "subseries," "subfonds," "subgrp," "file," or "item." Assigning a LEVEL attribute for the highest <c> is recommended; thereafter the attribute may be used when the repository deems it useful.
Example	<dsc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="combined"> <c level="series"> <did> <unitid>Series 1</unitid> <unittitle>Correspondence</unittitle> </did> <scopecontent>[...]</scopecontent> <c level="subseries"> <did> <unitid>Subseries 1.1</unitid> <unittitle>Outgoing Correspondence</unittitle> </did> <c level="file"> <did> <unittitle>Abbinger-Aldrich</unittitle> </did>

```
      </c> . . . </c>
     <c level="subseries">
     <did>
      <unitid>Subseries 1.2</unitid>
      <unittitle>Incoming Correspondence</unittitle>
     </did>
     <c level="file">
      <did>
       <unittitle>Adams-Ayers</unittitle>
      </did>
     </c> . . . </c>
    </c>
   </dsc>
```

Content model

```
   <content>
   </content>
```

Schema
Declaration

```
   element c
   {
     att.EADGlobal.attributes,
     att.desc.c.attributes,
     head?,
     did,
     model.desc.full*,
     ( thead?, c+ )*
   }
```

<c01>

<c01> (Component (First Level)) A wrapper element that designates the top or first-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (@*level*, @*otherlevel*)
Contained by	EAD: dsc
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c02 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict
Note	The LEVEL attribute is used to identify which level of description the <c01> covers, e.g., "series," "subseries," "file," or "item." Do not expect that all elements at the same numbered component designation represent the same level of description. The <c01> element can start at different levels of description in different finding aids, and, the quantity of hierarchical components can vary between, for example, a "series" and a "file." For example, a <c03> element could represent a "file" in one part of a finding aid, and in another part of the finding aid, a file might be a <c05> element because additional hierarchical groupings were needed to categorize the materials being described.See the description under Component <c> for additional

```
att.desc.c.attributes,
head?,
did,
model.desc.full*,
( thead?, c02+ )*
}
```

<c02>

<c02> (Component (Second Level)) A wrapper element that designates a second-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (@*level*, @*otherlevel*)
Contained by	EAD: c01
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c03 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict
Note	See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.
Schematron	<c02> MUST have a *level* attribute.
	<s:rule context="ead:c02"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="@level">c02 MUST have a level-attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>
Schema Declaration	element c02

```
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.desc.c.attributes,
  head?,
  did,
  model.desc.full*,
  ( thead?, c03+ )*
}
```

<c03>

<c03> (Component (Third Level)) A wrapper element that designates a third-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (@*level*, @*otherlevel*)
Contained by	EAD: c02
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement

bibliography bioghist c04 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict

Note See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.

Schematron <c03> MUST have a *level* attribute.

<s:rule context="ead:c03"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="@level">c03 MUST have a level-attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>

Content model

<content/>

Schema Declaration element c03

{

  att.EADGlobal.attributes,

  att.desc.c.attributes,

  head?,

  did,

  model.desc.full*,

  (thead?, c04+)*

}

<c04>

<c04> (Component (Fourth Level)) A wrapper element that designates a fourth-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module EAD

Attributes att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (@*level*, @*otherlevel*)

Contained by EAD: c03

May contain EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c05 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict

Note See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.

Schematron <c04> MUST have a *level* attribute.

<s:rule context="ead:c04"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="@level">c04 MUST have a level-attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>

Content model

<content/>

Schema Declaration element c04

{

  att.EADGlobal.attributes,

  att.desc.c.attributes,

  head?,

```
        did,
        model.desc.full*,
        ( thead?, c05+ )*
    }
```

<c05>

<c05> (Component (Fifth Level)) A wrapper element that designates a fifth-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (*@level*, *@otherlevel*)
Contained by	EAD: c04
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c06 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict
Note	See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.
Schematron	<c05> MUST have a *level* attribute. <s:rule context="ead:c05"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="@level">c05 MUST have a level-attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	<content/>

Schema Declaration	element c05
	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  att.desc.c.attributes,
	  head?,
	  did,
	  model.desc.full*,
	  (thead?, c06+)*
	}

<c06>

<c06> (Component (Sixth Level)) A wrapper element that designates a sixth-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (*@level*, *@otherlevel*)
Contained by	EAD: c05
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c07 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo

relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict

Note	See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.
Schematron	<c06> MUST have a *level* attribute. <s:rule context="ead:c06"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="@level">c06 MUST have a level-attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	The component elements SHOULD be numbered components between <c01> and <c06> <s:rule context="not(ead:c06)"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="ead:c07">c subelements SHOULD be between c01 and c06</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>

Schema Declaration	element c06

	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  att.desc.c.attributes,
	  head?,
	  did,
	  model.desc.full*,
	  (thead?, c07+)*
	}

<c07>

<c07> (Component (Seventh Level)) A wrapper element that designates a seventh-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (@*level*, @*otherlevel*)
Contained by	EAD: c06
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c08 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict
Note	See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.
Schematron	The component elements SHOULD be numbered components between <c01> and <c06> <s:rule context="not(ead:c07)"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="ead:c08">c subelements SHOULD be between c01 and c06</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>

Schema Declaration	element c07
	{

```
    att.EADGlobal.attributes,
    att.desc.c.attributes,
    head?,
    did,
    model.desc.full*,
    ( thead?, c08+ )*
}
```

<c08>

<c08> (Component (Eighth Level)) A wrapper element that designates a eighth-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (*@level*, *@otherlevel*)
Contained by	EAD: c07
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c09 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict
Note	See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.
Schematron	The component elements SHOULD be numbered components between <c01> and <c06> <s:rule context="not(ead:c08)"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="ead:c09">c subelements SHOULD be between c01 and c06</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	<content/>

Schema Declaration	element c08
	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  att.desc.c.attributes,
	  head?,
	  did,
	  model.desc.full*,
	  (thead?, c09+)*
	}

<c09>

<c09> (Component (Ninth Level)) A wrapper element that designates a ninth-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (*@level*, *@otherlevel*)

Contained by	EAD: c08
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c10 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict
Note	See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.
Schematron	The component elements SHOULD be numbered components between <c01> and <c06>
	<s:rule context="not(ead:c09)"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="ead:c10">c subelements SHOULD be between c01 and c06</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>

Schema Declaration	element c09
	{
	att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	att.desc.c.attributes,
	head?,
	did,
	model.desc.full*,
	(thead?, c10+)*
	}

<c10>

<c10> (Component (Tenth Level)) A wrapper element that designates a tenth-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (@*level*, @*otherlevel*)
Contained by	EAD: c09
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c11 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict
Note	See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.
Schematron	The component elements SHOULD be numbered components between <c01> and <c06>
	<s:rule context="not(ead:c10)"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="ead:c11">c subelements SHOULD be between c01 and c06</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>

Schema Declaration	element c10

```
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.desc.c.attributes,
  head?,
  did,
  model.desc.full*,
  ( thead?, c11+ )*
}
```

<c11>

<c11> (Component (Eleventh Level)) A wrapper element that designates a eleventh-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.desc.c (@*level*, @*otherlevel*)
Contained by	EAD: c10
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c12 controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial thead userestrict
Note	See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.
Schematron	The component elements SHOULD be numbered components between <c01> and <c06>
	<s:rule context="not(ead:c11)"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="ead:c12">c subelements SHOULD be between c01 and c06</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>
Schema Declaration	element c11

```
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.desc.c.attributes,
  head?,
  did,
  model.desc.full*,
  ( thead?, c12+ )*
}
```

<c12>

<c12> (Component (Twelfth Level)) A wrapper element that designates a twelfth-level subordinate part of the materials being described. Components may be either unnumbered <c> or numbered <c01>, <c02>, etc. The numbered components <c01> to <c12> assist a finding aid encoder in nesting up to twelve component levels accurately.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.desc.c

(@*level*, @*otherlevel*)

Contained by	EAD: c11
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist controlaccess custodhist dao daogrp descgrp did dsc fileplan head note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict
Note	See the description under Component (Unnumbered) <c> and Component (First Level) <c01> for additional information.See examples under <c01> Component (First Level) and in fully encoded examples in Appendix C.
Content model	

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element c12
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.desc.c.attributes,
   head?,
   did,
   model.desc.full*
}
```

<change>

<change> (Change) An optional subelement in the <revisiondesc> portion of <eadheader> used for a brief description of an update made to an EAD document. Additions to a finding aid or significant recoding should be noted, but not correction of a few typographical errors. The <change> element is modeled on a header element in the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) DTD. The TEI recommends that revisions be entered and numbered in reverse chronological order, with the most recent <change> first.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: revisiondesc
May contain	EAD: date item
Note	The <edition> element can be used to designate a finding aid that has been so substantively changed that it constitutes a new version and supersedes earlier versions of the finding aid.

Example	<eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" langencoding="iso639-2b"> . . . < revisiondesc>
	 <change>
	  <date normal="19970505">May 5, 1997</date>
	  <item>This electronic finding aid was updated to current
	    markup standards by Sarah Taylor using a perl
	    script. Updates included: eadheader, eadid, and
	    arrangement of did elements and their labels.</item>
	 </change>
	 </revisiondesc>
	</eadheader>

Schematron	In <revisiondesc>, each <change> element SHOULD contain a <date> element and a <item> element. [This rule has been taken from] <s:rule context="ead:change" role="SHOULD"> <s:assert test=".[ead:date and

ead:item]"> 'revisiondesc/change' element SHOULD contain both a date and an item subelement. </s:assert> </s:rule>

Schematron	The <date> element for each <change> in <revisiondesc> SHOULD not be empty
	<s:rule context="ead:change"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="normalize-space(ead:date)">a revisiondesc/change SHOULD have a not empty date</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>
Schema Declaration	element change { att.EADGlobal.attributes, date, item+ }

<chronitem>

<chronitem> (Chronology List Item) A formatting element that keeps a date paired with an associated event or group of events within a Chronology List <chronlist>. Each <chronitem> contains a <date> (either a single date or date range) coupled with an <event> or description of what occurred during that time. When multiple <event>s are associated with a single <date>, the <event>s are bundled in an <eventgrp> tag, which is then easily paired with the appropriate <date>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: chronlist
May contain	EAD: date event eventgrp
Example	<bioghist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	<head>Chronology</head>
	<chronlist>
	<chronitem>
	<date normal="18401012">1840</date>
	<event>Born Helena Opid in Krakow, Poland on October
	12th.</event>
	</chronitem>
	<chronitem>
	<date normal="1861">1861</date>
	<event>Made stage debut as Helena Modrzejewska in
	charity fair production of <title>The White
	Camellia</title>, in Bochnia, Poland.</event>
	</chronitem> . . . <chronitem>
	<date normal="19090409">1909</date>
	<event>Died April 8th at her home on Bay Island. Funeral
	services held at St. Vibiana's Cathedral in Los
	Angeles, and Modjeska was later buried in her native
	Krakow.</event>
	</chronitem>
	</chronlist>
	</bioghist>
Content model	
	<content>
	</content>
Schema	

Declaration element chronitem { att.EADGlobal.attributes, date, (event | eventgrp) }

\<chronlist>

\<chronlist> (Chronology List) A formatting element that designates information about the sequence in which significant past events, associated with the described materials, occurred. The \<chronlist> also provides a structured display to list these dates and events. Each \<chronlist> contains Chronology Items \<chronitem>s that pair a \<date> or date range with a brief description of an associated \<event> or events \<eventgrp>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.inter.noquote
Contained by	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist blockquote controlaccess custodhist daodesc descgrp div dsc dscgroup event extrefloc index item note odd originalsloc otherfindaid p phystech prefercite processinfo ref refloc relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict
May contain	EAD: chronitem head listhead
Note	A \<chronlist> most often appears in finding aids as part of the Biography or History \<bioghist> element, but \<chronlist> is also available for use in other elements that might need to present historical dates and events in a multicolumn list.
Example	\<bioghist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	\<head>Biographical Note\</head>
	\<chronlist>
	\<chronitem>
	\<date>1820, Dec. 20\</date>
	\<event>Born eighth of ten children of Taylor and Dicey
	(Jones) Duke; Little River, Orange Co., N.C.\</event>
	\</chronitem>
	\<chronitem>
	\<date>1842\</date>
	\<event>Married Mary Caroline Clinton\</event>
	\</chronitem>
	\<chronitem>
	\<date>1844\</date>
	\<event>Sidney Taylor Duke born\</event>
	\</chronitem> . . . \</chronlist>
	\</bioghist>
Content model	
	\<content>
	\</content>

Schema Declaration element chronlist { att.EADGlobal.attributes, head?, listhead?, chronitem+ }

\<colspec/>

\<colspec/> (Table Column Specification) An empty formatting element that designates the position and size of a single column in a Table \<table>. Attributes specify the unique name of the column, its unique number within the table, its width and rules, and the horizontal alignment of text within the column. The quantity of columns in a \<table> is determined by the COLS attribute of the

<tgroup> element, not by the number of <colspec/>s defined. The values set for <colspec/> override any values implied from <tgroup> or <thead> elements.

Module	EAD		
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)		
	colnum	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	colname	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	colwidth	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	colsep	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**1**
			O
	rowsep	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**1**
			O
	align	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**left**
			right
			center
			justify
			char
	char	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	charoff	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
Contained by	EAD: tgroup		
May contain	Empty element		
Note	See also related elements <table> and <tgroup>.		
Example	<table xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" frame="none">		

```
<table xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" frame="none">
 <tgroup cols="3">
  <colspec colnum="1" colname="1"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <colspec colnum="2" colname="2"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <colspec colnum="3" colname="3"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <thead>
   <row>
    <entry colname="1">Major Family Members</entry>
```

```
            <entry colname="2">Spouses</entry>
            <entry colname="3">Children</entry>
           </row>
          </thead>
          <tbody>
           <row>
            <entry colname="1">John Albemarle
               (1760-1806)</entry>
            <entry colname="2">Mary Frances Delaney
               (1769-1835)</entry>
            <entry colname="3">John Delaney Albemarle
               (1787-1848)</entry>
           </row> . . . </tbody>
          </tgroup>
         </table>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element colspec
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   attribute colnum { xsd:NMTOKEN }?,
   attribute colname { xsd:NMTOKEN }?,
   attribute colwidth { text }?,
   attribute colsep { "1" | "O" }?,
   attribute rowsep { "1" | "O" }?,
   attribute align { "left" | "right" | "center" | "justify" | "char" }?,
   attribute char { text }?,
   attribute charoff { xsd:NMTOKEN }?,
   empty
}
```

<container>

<container> (Container) A <did> subelement for information that contributes to locating the described materials by indicating the kinds of devices that hold the materials and identifying any sequential numbers assigned to those devices. The <container> element is used most frequently at the component level, i.e., once a Description of Subordinate Components <dsc> has been opened. This storage information can help researchers understand how extensive the material is, especially in the absence of a specific physical <extent> statement at the component level.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.typed (@*type*) att.labeled (@*label*)

parent	Status	Optional
	Datatype	

Member of	model.did
Contained by	EAD: archref did
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	Use of the TYPE attribute is strongly recommended to clarify the nature of the storage device. Use any useful designations, such as "box," "folder," and

"reel."The Physical Location <physloc> element can be used to designate the shelves, stacks, rooms, buildings, or other places where the containers are stored.

Use the ID of the Unit <unitid> element to designate control numbers not associated with a physical container, for example, accession numbers. Most repositories use either <container> or <unitid> as the call numbers for fetching material for researchers. If both elements are used, consider setting the LABEL attribute to specify which element is the call number.

The PARENT attribute can be used to point to the <container> element that describes the box in which a folder is housed.

Example

```
<dsc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="combined">
 <c level="series">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Correspondence, </unittitle>
  <unitdate normal="1942/1987">1942-1987 </unitdate>
 </did>
 <scopecontent>[...]</scopecontent>
 <c level="file">
 <did>
  <container id="mss1993-043.1.1"
   type="box">1</container>
  <container parent="mss1993-043.1.1"
   type="folder">1</container>
  <unittitle>
  <unitdate normal="1942/1943">1942-1943</unitdate>
  </unittitle>
 </did>
 </c>
 <c level="file">
 <did>
  <container parent="mss1993-043.1.1"
   type="folder">2</container>
  <unittitle>
  <unitdate normal="194401/194408">January-August 1944</unitdate>
  </unittitle>
 </did>
 </c>
 <c level="file">
 <did>
  <container parent="mss1993-043.1.1"
   type="folder">3</container>
  <unittitle>
  <unitdate normal="194409/194503">August
     1944-March 1945</unitdate>
  </unittitle>
 </did>
 </c> . . . </c> . . . </dsc>
```

Example

```
<c01 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="series">
 <did>[...]</did>
 <c02 level="file">
 <did>
  <container type="box">3</container>
```

```
        <container type="folder">18</container>
        <unittitle>Parent-Teacher Association of Fondsville </unittitle>
        <unitdate type="inclusive"
         normal="1959/1972">1959-1972</unitdate>
       </did>
      </c02>
      <c02 level="file">
       <did>
        <container type="box">3</container>
        <container type="folder">19</container>
        <unittitle>Pasta and Politics Club</unittitle>
        <unitdate type="inclusive"
         normal="1967/1975">1967-1975</unitdate>
       </did>
      </c02> . . . </c01>
```

Content model

```
        <content>
        </content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**   element container
                    {
                      att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                      att.typed.attributes,
                      att.labeled.attributes,
                      attribute parent { xsd:IDREFS }?,
                      (text | model.phrase.bare)*
                    }

<controlaccess>

<controlaccess> (Controlled Access Headings) A wrapper element that designates key access points for the described materials and enables authority-controlled searching across finding aids on a computer network. Hundreds of names and subjects can appear in a finding aid. Prominence can be given to the major ones by bundling them together in a single place within the <archdesc> or within a large Component <c> and tagging them with <controlaccess>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 controlaccess descgrp
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist controlaccess corpname famname function genreform geogname head list name note occupation p persname subject subtitle table title
Note	The <controlaccess> element designates terms comparable to those found in the 1xx, 6xx, and 7xx fields of MARC catalog records. Finding aid searches limited to the <controlaccess> element and its subelements will improve the likelihood of locating strong sources of information on a desired subject, because access terms will have been entered in a consistent form across finding aids, and also because only the most significant terms are likely to have been selected for encoding.Although names and terms from locally controlled vocabularies are permissible, the <controlaccess> subelements (<corpname>,

<famname>, <function>, <genreform>, <geogname>, <occupation>, <persname>, <subject>, and <title>) should come from national or international vocabularies whenever they are available to enable searches in information systems that include multiple finding aids, or finding aids and bibliographic records from many institutions.

These subelements have SOURCE attributes to specify the vocabulary tool from which the heading is taken and RULES attributes to specify the descriptive rules by which it has been formulated. The attribute AUTHFILENUMBER can be used to identify an authority file record that provides additional information about a heading and includes cross references. The ROLE attribute can be used to specify such factors as whether a heading is for the creator of the materials, the subject of the materials, or both.

Example

```
<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="collection">
 <did>[...]</did>
 <scopecontent>[...]</scopecontent>
 <controlaccess>
  <head>Index Terms</head>
  <p>These records are indexed under the following headings in
    the catalog of the Minnesota Historical Society.
    Researchers wishing to find related materials should
    search the catalog under these index terms.</p>
  <controlaccess>
   <head>Organizations:</head>
   <corpname encodinganalog="610"
    source="lcnaf">Board of
     Game and Fish Commissioners of Minnesota.</corpname>
  </controlaccess>
  <controlaccess>
   <head>Topics:</head>
   <subject encodinganalog="650"
    source="lcsh">Fishery law
     and legislation--Minnesota.</subject>
   <subject encodinganalog="650"
    source="lcsh">Game-law--Minnesota.</subject>
   <subject encodinganalog="650"
    source="lcsh">Law
     enforcement--Minnesota.</subject>
  </controlaccess>
  <controlaccess>
   <head>Government Functions:</head>
   <function encodinganalog="657"
    source="aat">Law
     enforcing.</function>
   <function encodinganalog="657"
    source="aat">Convicting.</function>
  </controlaccess>
 </controlaccess> . . . </archdesc>
```

Schematron

In <controlaccess>, EHRI welcomes any access points types : <subject>, <geogname>, <persname>, <orgname>.
```
<s:rule context="ead:controlaccess">
<s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:subject">controlaccess COULD have one or
more subject elements</s:assert> </s:rule>
```

Schematron	In \<controlaccess\>, EHRI welcomes any access points types : \<subject\>, \<geogname\>, \<persname\>, \<orgname\>. \<s:rule context="ead:controlaccess"\> \<s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:geogname"\>controlaccess COULD have one or more geogname elements\</s:assert\> \</s:rule\>
Schematron	In \<controlaccess\>, EHRI welcomes any access points types : \<subject\>, \<geogname\>, \<persname\>, \<orgname\>. \<s:rule context="ead:controlaccess"\> \<s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:persname"\>controlaccess COULD have one or more persname elements\</s:assert\> \</s:rule\>
Schematron	In \<controlaccess\>, EHRI welcomes any access points types : \<subject\>, \<geogname\>, \<persname\>, \<orgname\>. \<s:rule context="ead:controlaccess"\> \<s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:orgname"\>controlaccess COULD have one or more orgname elements\</s:assert\> \</s:rule\>
Schematron	Access points COULD be chosen in authority lists. The list is declared with a *source* attribute. The related id of this authority should be declared in an *authfilenumber* attribute. Note that EHRI provides URLs for vocabularies and authorities. Check the [EHRI website](#) for more information \<s:rule context="ead:controlaccess"\> \<s:assert role="COULD" test=". [@authfilenumber and @source]"\>Access points COULD be chosen in an authority list. This list should be declared in a @source attribute. The related id of this authority should be declared in an @authfilenumber attribute. \</s:assert\> \</s:rule\>
Content model	 \<content/\>

Schema Declaration	element controlaccess
	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  head?,
	  (model.blocks | model.access.title | controlaccess)+
	}

\<corpname\>

\<corpname\> (Corporate Name) The proper noun name that identifies an organization or group of people that acts as an entity. Examples include names of associations, institutions, business firms, nonprofit enterprises, governments, government agencies, projects, programs, religious bodies, churches, conferences, athletic contests, exhibitions, expeditions, fairs, and ships.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.access (*@source*, *@rules*, *@authfilenumber*, *@normal*) att.roled (*@role*)
Member of	model.access
Contained by	EAD: bibref controlaccess entry event extrefloc indexentry item label namegrp origination p physdesc physfacet ref refloc repository unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr subarea
Note	All names in a finding aid do not have to be tagged. One option is to tag those names for which access other than basic, undifferentiated keyword retrieval is desired. Use of controlled vocabulary forms is recommended to facilitate access to names within and across finding aid systems. The \<corpname\>

element may be used in text elements such as <p>. To indicate a corporate entity with major representation in the described materials, nest <corpname> within the <controlaccess> element.When a <corpname> is also the name of the institution providing intellectual access to the described material, nest <corpname> within the <repository> element. The <subarea> element may be used to show a secondary or subsidiary level within the <corpname>. When a <corpname> is also the name of the creator or compiler of the described material, nest <corpname> within the <origination> element.

The ROLE attribute can be used to specify other relationship(s) of the name to the described materials, for example, "compiler," "creator," "collector," or "subject." The ENCODINGANALOG attribute can be used to specify corresponding data categories in another coding system such as MARC. The NORMAL attribute can be used to provide the authority form of a name that has been encoded with <corpname> in narrative text, e.g., within a paragraph. Use the SOURCE attribute to specify the vocabulary from which the name has been taken, and/or the RULES attribute to specify the descriptive rules followed when forming the name. The attribute AUTHFILENUMBER can be used to identify a link to an authority file record that has more information about the name or cross references for alternative forms of the name and related names.

The <corpname> element is comparable to MARC fields 110, 111, 610, 611, 710, and 711.

See also the related elements <controlaccess>, <persname>, <famname>, <name>, and <subarea>.

Example	`<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="collection">`
	` <did>`
	`  <head>Collection Summary</head>`
	`  <origination label="Creator">`
	`   <corpname encodinganalog="110"`
	`    source="lcnaf">National`
	`     Association for the Advancement of Colored`
	`     People</corpname>`
	`  </origination> . . . </did> . . . </archdesc>`

Example	`<controlaccess xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
	` <head>Index Terms</head>`
	` <p>These records are indexed under the following headings in the`
	`   catalog of the Minnesota Historical Society. Researchers`
	`   wishing to find related materials should search the catalog`
	`   under these index terms.</p>`
	` <controlaccess>`
	`  <head>Organizations:</head>`
	`  <corpname encodinganalog="610"`
	`   source="lcnaf">Board of Game`
	`    and Fish Commissioners of Minnesota.</corpname>`
	` </controlaccess> . . . </controlaccess>`

Content model	`<content>` `</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element corpname`
	`{`
	`   att.EADGlobal.attributes,`

```
att.access.attributes,
att.roled.attributes,
( text | model.phrase.bare | subarea )*
}
```

<creation>

<creation> (Creation) A subelement of the <profiledesc> portion of <eadheader> used for information about the encoding of the finding aid, including the person(s) or agency(ies) responsible for the encoding, the date, and the circumstances under which the encoding was done.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: profiledesc
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref date emph expan extptr extref lb linkgrp ptr ref subtitle title
Note	This element is modeled on a Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) DTD header element.
Example	<eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" langencoding="iso639-2b"> . . . < profiledesc>
	<creation>Machine-readable finding aid and skeletal markup
	derived via a macro from WordPerfect file; markup
	checked and completed by Sarah Taylor. <date normal="19950423">April 2 3, 1995.</date>
	</creation>
	</profiledesc> . . . </eadheader>
Content model	
	<content>
	</content>
Schema Declaration	element creation
	{
	att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	(text | model.phrase.basic | date)*
	}

<custodhist>

<custodhist> (Custodial History) Information about the chain of ownership of the materials being described, before they reached the immediate source of acquisition. Both physical possession and intellectual ownership can be described, providing details of changes of ownership and/or custody that may be significant in terms of authority, integrity, and interpretation.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 custodhist descgrp
May contain	EAD: acqinfo address blockquote chronlist custodhist head list note p table
Note	Although the history of custody is sometimes synonymous with provenance, a description of archival provenance may be more appropriate for the <origination>, <bioghist>, or <scopecontent> elements.Use Acquisition Information <acqinfo> for text about the immediate source of the described materials and the circumstances under which they were received by the

repository.

In EAD Version 1.0 <custodhist> was a subelement of Administrative Information <admininfo>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp> element can be used to replace <admininfo> where it has been used as a wrapper when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002.

The <custodhist> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.2.3 and MARC field 561.

Example	<custodhist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	  The George Franklin Papers were maintained by the staff of
	   the Mayor's Office, City of Irvine, California, in the
	   records storage facility at City Hall from the time of
	   Franklin's death in 1972 until they were transferred, at his
	   family's request, to Special Collections and Archives, The
	   UC Irvine Libraries, in 1988.
	</custodhist>

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element custodhist
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   head?,
   ( model.blocks | custodhist | acqinfo )+
}
```

<dao>

<dao> (Digital Archival Object) A linking element that uses the attributes ENTITYREF or HREF to connect the finding aid information to electronic representations of the described materials. The <dao> and <daogrp> elements allow the content of an archival collection or record group to be incorporated in the finding aid. These digital representations include graphic images, audio or video clips, images of text pages, and electronic transcriptions of text. The objects can be selected examples, or digital surrogates all the materials in an archival fonds or series.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.xlink (@*label*, @*href*, @*type*, @*title*, @*from*, @*to*, @*role*, @*actuate*, @*show*, @*arcrole*, @*xpointer*, @*entityref*, @*target*, @*parent*)
Member of	model.desc.full model.did
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp archref bioghist c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 did odd scopecontent
May contain	EAD: daodesc
Note	Use the Extended Pointer <extptr/> element to link the finding aid to electronic objects that are not part of the described materials.Use the ACTUATE attribute to designate whether the object is displayed automatically ("onload") or only if the user requests it ("onrequest"). Use the SHOW attribute to define whether a remote resource appears at the point of the link, in a new window, or replaces

the link.

See also related elements <daodesc>, <daogrp>, and <daoloc>.

While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.

Example

```
<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Photographs</unittitle>
  <unitdate type="inclusive"
   normal="1895/1928">1895-1928</unitdate>
 </did>
 <c03 level="item">
  <did>
   <unittitle>John Smith graduation portrait</unittitle>
   <unitdate type="single"
    normal="18950528">May 28,
      1895</unitdate>
   <dao linktype="simple"
    href="http://imgs.ud.edu/archives/image/f12001_1.jpg" actuate="onrequest" show="new"/>
  </did>
 </c03>
 <c03 level="item">
  <did>
   <unittitle>Photographs of John Smith and family
      members</unittitle>
   <unitdate type="inclusive"
    normal="1907-1928">1907-1928</unitdate>
   <physdesc>
    <extent>12 photographic
      prints</extent>
   </physdesc>
  </did>
 </c03>
</c02>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

element dao { att.EADGlobal.attributes, att.xlink.attributes, daodesc? }

<daodesc>

<daodesc> (Digital Archival Object Description) Information about the contents, usage, or source of a Digital Archival Object <dao> or Digital Archival Object Group <daogrp>. When the <unittitle> or other descriptive information in a Component <c> is sufficient to identify one or more digital objects, the <daodesc> caption is not necessary.

Module   EAD

Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)

Contained by	EAD: dao daogrp daoloc
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist head list note p table
Note	See also related elements <dao>, <daogrp>, and <daoloc>.
Example	<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">

```
<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Photographs of John Smith and family
    members</unittitle>
  <unitdate type="inclusive"
   normal="1895/1928">1895-1928</unitdate>
  <daogrp linktype="extended">
   <daodesc>
    <p>Sample digitized image from this file: John Smith
      graduation portrait, <date normal="18950528">28
       May 1895</date>.</p>
   </daodesc>
   <resource linktype="resource"
    label="start"/>
   <daoloc entityref="f0042_1tmb"
    linktype="locator" label="thumb"/>
   <daoloc entityref="f0042_1ref"
    linktype="locator" label="reference"/>
   <arc linktype="arc" show="embed"
    actuate="onload" from="start" to="thumb"/>
   <arc linktype="arc" show="new"
    actuate="onrequest" from="thumb" to="reference"/>
  </daogrp>
 </did>
</c02>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration   element daodesc { att.EADGlobal.attributes, head?, model.blocks+ }

<daogrp>

<daogrp> (Digital Archival Object Group) A wrapper element that contains two or more related Digital Archival Object Locations <daoloc> that should be thought of as a group and may share a single common Digital Archival Object Description <daodesc>. They may also form an extended link group to enable a set of multidirectional links. The <dao>, <daogrp>, and <daoloc> elements allow the content of the described materials to be incorporated in the finding aid.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.xlink (@*label*, @*href*, @*type*, @*title*, @*from*, @*to*, @*role*, @*actuate*, @*show*, @*arcrole*, @*xpointer*, @*entityref*, @*target*, @*parent*)
Member of	model.desc.full model.did
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp archref bioghist c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 did odd scopecontent
May contain	EAD: arc daodesc daoloc extptrloc extrefloc ptrloc refloc resource
Note	See also related elements <dao>, <daodesc>, <daoloc> and <linkgrp>.While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking

	elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.

Example	`<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">`
	` <did>`
	`  <unittitle>Photographs of John Smith and family`
	`    members</unittitle>`
	`  <unitdate type="inclusive"`
	`  normal="1895/1928">1895-1928</unitdate>`
	`  <daogrp linktype="extended">`
	`   <daodesc>`
	`    <p>Sample digitized image from this file: John Smith`
	`       graduation portrait, <date normal="18950528">28`
	`         May 1895</date>.</p>`
	`   </daodesc>`
	`   <resource linktype="resource"`
	`   label="start"/>`
	`   <daoloc entityref="f0042_1tmb"`
	`   linktype="locator" label="thumb"/>`
	`   <daoloc entityref="f0042_1ref"`
	`   linktype="locator" label="reference"/>`
	`   <arc linktype="arc" show="embed"`
	`   actuate="onload" from="start" to="thumb"/>`
	`   <arc linktype="arc" show="new"`
	`   actuate="onrequest" from="thumb" to="reference"/>`
	`  </daogrp>`
	` </did>`
	`</c02>`

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**

```
element daogrp
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.xlink.attributes,
  daodesc?,
  ( daoloc | model.extended.els )+
}
```

<daoloc>

<daoloc> (Digital Archival Object Location) The location of a Digital Archival Object <dao> that is a resource in an extended link. Within a Digital Archival Object Group <daogrp>, a <daoloc> element is used instead of a <dao> element to indicate that an extended, possibly multidirectional link is being tagged. See also related elements <dao>, <daogrp>, and <daodesc>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*)

Contained by	EAD: daogrp
May contain	EAD: daodesc
Note	While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.
Example	`<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">`

```
<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Photographs of John Smith and family
    members</unittitle>
  <unitdate type="inclusive"
   normal="1895/1928">1895-1928</unitdate>
  <daogrp linktype="extended">
   <daodesc>
    <p>Sample digitized image from this file: John Smith
       graduation portrait, <date normal="18950528">28
         May 1895</date>.</p>
   </daodesc>
   <resource linktype="resource"
    label="start"/>
   <daoloc entityref="f0042_1tmb"
    linktype="locator" label="thumb"/>
   <daoloc entityref="f0042_1ref"
    linktype="locator" label="reference"/>
   <arc linktype="arc" show="embed"
    actuate="onload" from="start" to="thumb"/>
   <arc linktype="arc" show="new"
    actuate="onrequest" from="thumb" to="reference"/>
  </daogrp>
 </did>
</c02>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element daoloc { att.EADGlobal.attributes, att.xlink.attributes, daodesc? }

<date>

<date> (Date) A generic element that contains a month, day, or year in any format. Use <date> to identify any dates that merit encoding, except for the creation and other relevant dates of the described materials, which are instead tagged with the <unitdate> element. Examples of dates that might merit encoding are a person's birth date, the date the materials were acquired, or the date of an event in a chronology. These dates may be entered in the form of text or numbers, and may consist of a single date or range of dates.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*) att.normalized (*@normal*) att.calendar (*@calendar*) att.era (*@era*) att.certainty (*@certainty*)
Member of	model.data

Contained by	EAD: change chronitem creation entry event extrefloc imprint item label legalstatus p physdesc physfacet publicationstmt ref refloc subtitle title titlepage titleproper unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	A standard numeric form of the date (YYYYMMDD, etc.) can be specified with the NORMAL attribute to facilitate machine comparison of dates for searching, for example, 19480101/19980401 (YYYYMMDD/YYYYMMDD), or 1948/1998 (YYYY/YYYY). The TYPE attribute can be used to supply a more specific designation, for example, "life," "flourish," "depiction," "publication," or "acquisition." The CERTAINTY attribute may be used to indicate the degree of precision in the dating, for example, "circa," "approximately," or "after." The CALENDAR attribute, which has a default value of "gregorian," specifies the calendar from which the date stems. The value "ce" (common or Christian era) is the default for the ERA attribute.

Example	`<bibref xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
	 `<persname role="author">Kinder, Dolores.</persname>`
	 `<title render="italic">Once Upon a Lullaby.</title>`
	 `<imprint>`
	  `<geogname>New York: </geogname>`
	  `<publisher>Wells & Sons, </publisher>`
	  `<date type="publication">1931</date>`
	 `</imprint>`
	`</bibref>`

Example	`<acqinfo xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
	 `<p>This collection, number <num type="donor">1988-015,</num> was`
	   `donated by Mrs. Dolores Franklin on <date type="acquisition"`
	   `normal="19880423">April 23, 1988.</date>`
	 `</p>`
	`</acqinfo>`

Schematron	All the `<date>` elements MUST have a *normal* attribute whose pattern respects the ISO8601 standard and take the following form: YYYY-MM-DD `<s:rule context="ead:date"> <s:assert role="MUST"  test="matches(@normal, '^(([0-9]|[1-9][0-9]|[1-9][0-9]{2}|[1-9][0-9]{3}))-(0[1-9]|1[012])-(0[1-9]|[12][0-9]| 3[01])$')">@normal attribute MUST respect ISO8601 pattern = YYYY-MM-DD</s:assert> </s:rule>`
Content model	`<content/>`

Schema Declaration	element date
	{
	   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	   att.typed.attributes,
	   att.normalized.attributes,
	   att.calendar.attributes,
	   att.era.attributes,
	   att.certainty.attributes,
	   (text | model.phrase.bare)*
	}

<defitem>

<defitem> (Definition List Item) A formatting element in a special type of list that keeps an entry in a list (called a <label>) paired with its definition, description, or explanation (called an <item>). The <defitem> can be thought of as an entry with two cells: <label> followed by <item>. Lists with <defitem>s are often displayed in two columns.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: list
May contain	EAD: item label
Note	See also related element <list>.
Example	<list xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="deflist">
	<listhead>
	<head01>Abbreviation</head01>
	<head02>Expansion</head02>
	</listhead>
	<defitem>
	<label>ALS</label>
	<item>Autograph Letter Signed</item>
	</defitem>
	<defitem>
	<label>TLS</label>
	<item>Typewritten Letter Signed</item>
	</defitem>
	</list>

Content model

       <content>
       </content>

Schema
Declaration   element defitem { att.EADGlobal.attributes, label, item }

<descgrp>

<descgrp> (Description Group) An element that can be used to bring together any group of elements that are children of the Archival Description <archdesc> element except for the <did> and <dsc> elements. Description Group might be used, for example, to cluster elements into groups that correspond to the areas specified by the General International Standard Archival Description (ISAD(G)).

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp
May contain	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo address altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist blockquote chronlist controlaccess custodhist descgrp fileplan head list note odd originalsloc otherfindaid p phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial table userestrict
Note	Description Group can be used in place of wrapper elements from EAD Version 1.0 such as Administrative Information <admininfo> and Adjunct Descriptive Data <add>.Use the TYPE attribute to characterize the nature of the groupings.

Example

```
<descgrp xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <head>Related and Associated Materials</head>
 <separatedmaterial>
  <p>Photographs and sound recordings have been transferred to
     the appropriate custodial divisions of the Library where
     they are identified as part of these papers. Among the
     sound recordings are the following broadcasts:</p>
  <list>[...]</list>
 </separatedmaterial>
 <separatedmaterial>
  <p>Other papers of Earl Warren, which relate chiefly to his
     early years and public service in California, are held
     by the California State Archives in Sacramento.</p>
 </separatedmaterial>
 <relatedmaterial>
  <p>Records relating to the Warren Commission are held in the
     National Archives and Records Administration.</p>
 </relatedmaterial>
</descgrp>
```

Example

```
<descgrp xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <head>Important Information for Users of the Collection</head>
 <accessrestrict>
  <head>Access</head>
  <p>Collection is open for research. Scrapbooks are extremely
     fragile and require close supervision by Special
     Collections staff during use.</p>
 </accessrestrict>
 <userestrict>
  <head>Publication Rights</head>
  <p>Property rights reside with the University of California.
     Literary rights are retained by the creators of the
     records and their heirs. For permissions to reproduce or
     to publish, please contact the Head of Special
     Collections and Archives.</p>
 </userestrict>
 <prefercite>
  <head>Preferred Citation</head>
  <p>Eugene Loring Papers. MS-P02. Special Collections and
     Archives, The UCI Libraries, Irvine, California.</p>
 </prefercite>
 <acqinfo>
  <head>Acquisition Information</head>
  <p>Gift of Eugene Loring, 1975 and 1980.</p>
 </acqinfo>
 <processinfo>
  <head>Processing History</head>
  <p>Preliminary processing by Roger Berry in 1975 and 1980.
     Processing completed by Emma Kheradyar in 1996-1997.
     Guide edited by Laura Clark Brown in 1998 and completed
     by William Landis in 2000.</p>
 </processinfo>
</descgrp>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element descgrp
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   head?,
   ( model.blocks | model.desc.base )+
}
```

<descrules>

<descrules> (Descriptive Rules) A subelement of Profile Description <profiledesc> for the enumeration of the rules, standards, conventions, and protocols used in preparing the description.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: profiledesc
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref emph expan extptr extref lb linkgrp ptr ref subtitle title
Note	Do not confuse this element with the RULES attribute in the <controlaccess> subelements, e.g., <persname>, <geogname>, and <title>, which are used to specify the descriptive rules, such as AACR2R, used in formulating individual access points.The <descrules> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.7.2.
Example	<descrules xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">Finding aid prepared using <title render="italic">Rules for Archival Description</title> </descrules>

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element descrules { att.EADGlobal.attributes, ( text | model.phrase.basic )* }
```

<did>

<did> (Descriptive Identification) A required wrapper element that bundles other elements identifying core information about the described materials in either Archival Description <archdesc> or a Component <c>. The various <did> subelements are intended for brief, clearly designated statements of information and, except for <note>, do not require Paragraphs <p> to enter text.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12
May contain	EAD: abstract container dao daogrp head langmaterial materialspec note origination physdesc physloc repository unitdate unitid unittitle
Note	The <did> groups elements that constitute a good basic description of an archival unit. This grouping ensures that the same data elements and structure are available at every level of description within the EAD hierarchy. It facilitates

the retrieval or other output of a cohesive body of elements for resource discovery and recognition.The <did> in <archdesc> is sometimes called the high level <did>, because it describes the collection as a whole. Consider using the following elements for this high level <did>: <head>, <origination>, <unittitle>, <physdesc>, <repository>, and . The <unitid> and <physloc> elements are suggested if applicable to a repository's practice. A <did> within a Component <c> can be less complete, and might have only a <container> or <unitid> and a <unittitle>.

Example
```
<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="inventory" level="subgrp">
 <did>
  <head>Overview of the Records</head>
  <repository label="Repository:">
   <corpname>Minnesota Historical Society</corpname>
  </repository>
  <origination label="Creator:">Minnesota. Game and Fish
    Department</origination>
  <unittitle label="Title:">Game laws violation records, </unittitle>
  <unitdate label="Dates:">1908-1928</unitdate>
  <abstract label="Abstract:">Records of prosecutions for and
    seizures of property resulting from violation of the
    state's hunting and fishing laws.</abstract>
  <physdesc label="Quantity:">2.25 cu. ft. (7 v. and 1 folder
    in 3 boxes)</physdesc>
  <physloc label="Location:">See Detailed Description section
    for box location</physloc>
 </did> . . . </archdesc>
```

Example
```
<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="collection">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Early Durham Cartularies</unittitle>
  <unitid>GB-0033-DCD</unitid>
  <unitdate label="Date range:"
   normal="1220/1230">compiled
    between 1220 and 1230, with later additions</unitdate>
  <physdesc label="Extent:">1 cartulary (175ff. and inserts),
    1 fragment and 1 [photostat of] fragment.</physdesc>
  <repository label="Repository:">Durham University Library,
    Archives and Special Collections</repository>
  <origination label="Origination:">early cartularies produced
    by the Durham monastic administration. </origination>
 </did>
</archdesc>
```

Example
```
<dsc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="combined">
 <c01 level="series">
  <did>
   <unittitle>Series 1: Correspondence,</unittitle>
   <unitdate type="inclusive">1943-1978</unitdate>
   <physdesc>
    <extent>2.5 linear ft. </extent>(5 document
      boxes)</physdesc>
  </did>
  <scopecontent>[...]</scopecontent>
  <c02 level="subseries">
```

```
                 <did>
                  <unittitle>Subseries 1.1: Outgoing Correspondence, </unittitle>
                  <unitdate type="inclusive">1943-1969</unitdate>
                  <physdesc>
                   <extent>0.75 linear
                        ft.</extent>
                  </physdesc>
                 </did>
                 <c03 level="file">
                  <did>
                   <physloc audience="internal">B:14:D</physloc>
                   <container type="box">1</container>
                   <container type="folder">1</container>
                   <unittitle>Abbinger-Aldrich</unittitle>
                   <physdesc>
                    <extent>14 letters</extent>
                   </physdesc>
                  </did>
                 </c03>
                </c02>
               </c01>
              </dsc>
```

Schematron	<did> elements MUST contain <unitid>
	<s:rule context="ead:did"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="ead:unitid">a did MUST have a unitid, according 17.3 and WP19</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	<did> elements MUST contain <unittittle>
	<s:rule context="ead:did"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="ead:unittitle">a did MUST have a unittitle, according 17.3</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	a <did> MUST have at least one non-empty <unittitle>
	<s:rule context="ead:did"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="count(ead:unittitle[text()]) > 0">a did MUST have at least one non-empty unittitle</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>

Schema Declaration	element did { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (head?, model.did+) }

<dimensions>

<dimensions> (Dimensions) A subelement of <physdesc> for information about the size of the materials being described; usually includes numerical data. Measurements may be expressed in any convenient unit. Attributes may be used when the unit of measurement or type of dimension is not clear in the finding aid text. The UNIT attribute specifies the kind of measurement, for example, "inches" or "meters." The TYPE attribute specifies the kind of dimensions being measured, for example, "height" or "circumference." Multiple dimensions, for example, height-by-width, can be tagged in a single <dimensions> element or in separate <dimensions> with distinctive attribute values.

Module	EAD		
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.labeled (@*label*) att.typed (@*type*)		
	unit	**Status**	Optional

Datatype

Contained by	EAD: dimensions physdesc
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref dimensions emph expan extptr extref lb linkgrp ptr ref subtitle title
Note	Do not confuse with the <extent> element, which is used to tag the quantity of described materials.
Example	<dsc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="in-depth">

  <head>Handlist</head>
  <c01>
   <did>
    <unittitle>Cartuarium vetus</unittitle>
    <physdesc>3 paper leaves; 1 parchment on paper leaf; 175
      leaves, 4 inserts, 2 schedules, parchment; 4 paper
      leaves <dimensions> approximately 230 mm x 163
       mm.</dimensions>
    </physdesc>
   </did>
  </c01> . . . </dsc>

Content model

    <content>
    </content>

Schema Declaration

    element dimensions
    {
      att.EADGlobal.attributes,
      att.labeled.attributes,
      att.typed.attributes,
      attribute unit { text }?,
      (text, model.phrase.basic, dimensions)*
    }

<div>

<div> (Text Division) A generic element that designates a major section of text within <frontmatter>. Examples of these text divisions include a title page, preface, acknowledgments, or instructions for using a finding aid. Use the <head> element to identify the <div>'s purpose.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: div frontmatter
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist div head list note p table
Example	<frontmatter xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">

  <titlepage>[...]</titlepage>
  <div>
   <head>Acknowledgements</head>
   <p>The University of California, Irvine Libraries wishes to
    acknowledge the generosity of the family of Edgar Holden
    for an endowment in support of the processing and
    maintenance of this collection and the University of
    California Office of the President for grant funding in
    support of the encoding of this and other finding aids
    using the Encoded Archival Description standard.</p>

Example

```
</div> . . . </frontmatter>
<frontmatter xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <titlepage>
  <titleproper>Inventory of the Rietta Hines Herbert Papers,
    1940-1969</titleproper>
  <author>Processed by: Debra Carter</author>
  <publisher>Schomburg Center for Research in Black
    Culture<lb/> The New York Public Library</publisher>
  <date>August, 1977</date>

  <!--&amp;schtp;-->
  <p> © <date>1999 </date> The New York Public Library, Astor,
    Lenox and Tilden Foundations. All rights reserved.</p>
 </titlepage>
 <div>
  <head>Preface</head>
  <p>This inventory is one of several prepared as a part of
    the archival preservation program at the Schomburg
    Center for Research in Black Culture, a research
    division of The New York Public Library.</p>
  <p>The Schomburg archival preservation program involves the
    organization and preservation of primary source material
    held by the Center and of significance to the study of
    the Black Experience. It furthermore includes the
    preparation of detailed inventories of these records,
    making the information contained therein accessible as
    well as available to scholars.</p>
  <p>The necessary staff and supplies for this program were
    made available through a combination of Library,
    National Endowment for the Humanities grant, and State
    of New York grant funds.</p>
 </div>
</frontmatter>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

element div { att.EADGlobal.attributes, head?, model.blocks*, div* }

<dsc>

<dsc> (Description of Subordinate Components) A wrapper element that bundles information about the hierarchical groupings of the materials being described. The subordinate components can be presented in several different forms or levels of descriptive detail, which are identified by the element's required TYPE attribute. For example, "analyticover" identifies an overview description of series and subseries, which might be followed by a second <dsc> with the TYPE attribute set to "in-depth" that provides a more detailed listing of the content of the materials, including information about the container numbers associated with those materials. The TYPE attribute value "combined" is used when the description of a series is followed immediately by a listing of the contents of that series. The TYPE attribute "othertype" is for models that do not follow any of the above-mentioned formats, in which case the OTHERTYPE attribute can then be used to

specify a particular presentation model.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
	att.dsctab.tpattern (*@tpattern*)

	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
		Derived from att.typed
		Status Optional
		Datatype

Member of	model.desc.full
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 dsc
May contain	EAD: address blockquote c c01 chronlist dsc head list note p table thead
Note	See also related elements <c> and <c01> through <c12>.
Example	<dsc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="combined">

```
 <c01 level="series">
  <did>
   <unittitle>Activities, </unittitle>
   <unitdate type="inclusive">1965-1971</unitdate>
   <physdesc>
    <extent>0.3 linear ft.</extent>
   </physdesc>
  </did>
  <scopecontent>
   <p>The Activities series gives examples of the types of
      activities offered at the camp. The folders contain
   <genreform>reports,</genreform>
    <genreform>schedules,</genreform> and
   <genreform>inventories </genreform> from each
      activity area of the camp. These records are
      predominantly from the late 1960s and early 1970s
      and replicate some of the information found in the
      staff manuals.</p>
  </scopecontent>
  <c02 level="file">
   <did>
    <container label="Box" type="box">1</container>
    <unittitle>General, </unittitle>
    <unitdate type="inclusive">1970-1971</unitdate>
   </did>
  </c02>
  <c02 level="file">
   <did>
    <container type="box">1</container>
    <unittitle>Camp Crafts, </unittitle>
    <unitdate>1967</unitdate>
   </did>
  </c02>
  <c02 level="file">
   <did>
    <container type="box">1</container>
```

```
                            <unittitle>Education Program, </unittitle>
                            <unitdate>1967</unitdate>
                           </did>
                          </c02>
                          <c02 level="file">
                           <did>
                            <container type="box">1</container>
                            <unittitle>Expressive Arts, </unittitle>
                            <unitdate>1970</unitdate>
                           </did>
                          </c02> . . . </c01> . . . </dsc>
```

Example
```
                          <dsc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="analyticover">
                           <c01 level="series">
                            <did>
                             <unitid>1-429-1</unitid>
                             <unittitle>Forest Stand Maps by Township and Basemap </unittitle>
                             <unitdate type="inclusive">1958-1979</unitdate>
                             <physdesc>
                              <extent>36 ft. (approx. 1700 sheets)</extent>
                                of <genreform>cartographic records.</genreform>
                             </physdesc>
                             <materialspec>Scale: predominantly 4 inches to 1 mile
                                (1:15,840)</materialspec>
                            </did>
                            <scopecontent>
                             <p>Series consists of forest stand maps. A map
                                sheet was created for each township of the surveyed
                                section of the province and for each basemap area in
                                unsurveyed areas.</p> . . . </scopecontent>
                           </c01>
                           <c01 level="series">
                            <did>
                             <unitid>RG 1-429-2</unitid>
                             <unittitle>Forest Stand Map Composites</unittitle>
                             <unitdate type="inclusive">1958-1971</unitdate>
                             <physdesc>
                              <extent>ca.70</extent>
                              <genreform>maps
                              </genreform>
                             </physdesc>
                             <materialspec>Scale: 1 inch to 1 mile</materialspec>
                            </did>
                            <scopecontent>
                             <p>Series consists of composite maps of the
                                forest resource inventory data from all the
                                townships within a Forestry Management Unit. The
                                composites offer a broader view of an area than the
                                township/basemaps, however the forest stand
                                statistics are quite small and difficult to
                                read.</p> . . . </scopecontent>
                           </c01> . . . </dsc>
```
Example
```
                          <dsc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="in-depth">
```

```
<c01 level="series">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Series 1: Administrative Records, </unittitle>
  <unitdate type="inclusive">1912-1956.</unitdate>
 </did>
 <c02>
  <did>
   <container id="mss92-894c-bx1"
    type="box">Box
      1</container>
   <container parent="mss92-894c-bx1"
    label="Folder" type="folder">7-8 </container>
   <unittitle>Annual reports, </unittitle>
   <unitdate type="inclusive">1912-16, 1922</unitdate>
  </did>
 </c02>
 <c02>
  <did>
   <container parent="mss92-894c-bx1"
    label="Folder" type="folder">9 </container>
   <unittitle>Board of Directors–Minutes and
      correspondence, </unittitle>
   <unitdate type="inclusive">1947-1949</unitdate>
  </did>
 </c02>
 <c02>
  <did>
   <container parent="mss92-894c-bx1"
    label="Folder" type="folder">10 </container>
   <unittitle>Contracts and specifications for
      construction of nurses' quarters, </unittitle>
   <unitdate>ca. 1947</unitdate>
  </did>
 </c02>
 <c02>
  <did>
   <container parent="mss92-894c-bx1"
    label="Folder" type="folder">11 </container>
   <unittitle>Marin County Reports, </unittitle>
   <unitdate type="inclusive">1955-1956</unitdate>
  </did>
 </c02>
</c01>
<c01 level="series">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Series 3: Philip King Brown, </unittitle>
  <unitdate type="inclusive">1910-1931, n.d.</unitdate>
 </did>
 <c02>
  <did>
   <container parent="mss92-894c-bx1"
    label="Folder" type="folder">21 </container>
```

```
                     <unittitle>Correspondence, </unittitle>
                     <unitdate type="inclusive">1910-1931</unitdate>
                    </did>
                   </c02>
                   <c02>
                    <did>
                     <container parent="mss92-894c-bx1"
                      label="Folder" type="folder">22 </container>
                     <unittitle>Writings, </unittitle>
                     <unitdate>n.d.</unitdate>
                    </did>
                   </c02> . . . </c01>
                  </dsc>
```

Schematron	<dsc> MUST have a *type* attribute <s:rule context="ead:dsc"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="@type">dsc MUST have a type attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	if <dsc>'s *type* attribute has "othertype" for value, <dsc> MUST have a not empty *othertype* attribute <s:rule context="ead:dsc"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="not(@type ='othertype') or (@othertype and not(@othertype=''))">if dsc's type attribute has "othertype" for value, dsc MUST have a not empty othertype attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	the <dsc> components SHOULD numbered, from <c01> to <c06> <s:rule role="SHOULD" context="ead:dsc | ead:c01 | ead:c02 | ead:c03 | ead:c04 | ead:c05 "> <s:assert test="not(ead:c)">the dsc components SHOULD numbered, from c01 to c06</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>

Schema Declaration	element dsc
	 {
	   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	   att.dsctab.tpattern.attributes,
	   attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
	   (head?, model.blocks*),
	   ((thead?, ((c, thead?)+ | (c01, thead?)+)) | dsc*)
	 }

<dscgroup>

<dscgroup> (Description of Subordinate Components Group) A wrapper element used only within the <archdescgrp> subelement of <eadgrp> in the EAD Group Document Type Definition. The <dscgrp> contains two or more <ead> encoded finding aids, one after the other.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	—
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist ead head list note p table
Note	See also the <eadgrp> element.
Content model	
	<content> </content>

| Schema Declaration | element dscgroup { att.EADGlobal.attributes, head?, ead, model.blocks* } |

<ead>

<ead> (Encoded Archival Description) The outermost wrapper element for an information access tool known generically as a finding aid. A finding aid establishes physical and intellectual control over many types of archival materials and helps researchers understand and access the materials being described. The <ead> element defines a particular instance of a document encoded with the EAD Document Type Definition.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.relatedencoding (*@relatedencoding*)
Contained by	EAD: dscgroup
May contain	EAD: archdesc eadheader frontmatter
Note	The AUDIENCE attribute value may be set to "external" to display data in all subelements, unless the value is changed for a specific element. A separate Document Type Definition called EAD Group can be used to bundle <ead> finding aids that describe different parts of a collection that have been dispersed among various institutions or custodial units. See the <eadgrp> element description for additional information.
Example	The following elements constitute the minimum set of elements for an EAD instance (i.e., those required by the DTD). Although the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc> is not itself required, if it is used its type attribute must be set.

<ead xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <eadheader>
  <eadid>[...]</eadid>
  <filedesc>
   <titlestmt>
    <titleproper>[...]</titleproper>
   </titlestmt>
  </filedesc>
 </eadheader>
 <archdesc level="fonds">
  <did>[...]</did>
  <dsc type="combined">[...]</dsc>
 </archdesc>
</ead>

Content model

<content>
</content>

| Schema Declaration | element ead
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.relatedencoding.attributes,
  (eadheader, frontmatter?, archdesc)
} |

\<eadheader\>

\<eadheader\> (EAD Header) A wrapper element for bibliographic and descriptive information about the finding aid document rather than the archival materials being described. The \<eadheader\> is modeled on the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) header element to encourage uniformity in the provision of metadata across document types.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.encodings (*@countryencoding*, *@langencoding*, *@scriptencoding*, *@repositoryencoding*, *@dateencoding*) att.relatedencoding (*@relatedencoding*)

	findaidstatus	The extent to which the encoded finding aid is a finished document.
		Status Optional
		Datatype

Contained by	EAD: ead
May contain	EAD: eadid filedesc profiledesc revisiondesc
Note	The \<eadheader\> is required, because information that was often unrecorded for a local paper finding aid is essential in a machine-readable environment. Four subelements are available, which must occur in the following order: \<eadid\> (required), \<filedesc\> (required), \<profiledesc\> (optional), and \<revisiondesc\> (optional). These elements and their subelements provide: a unique identification code for the finding aid; bibliographic information, such as the author and title of the finding aid; information about the encoding of the finding aid; and statements about significant revisions.The FINDAIDSTATUS attribute can be used to indicate how complete or polished the information in the finding aid is. The COUNTRYENCODING, DATEENCODING, LANGENCODING, REPOSITORYENCODING, and SCRIPTENCODING attributes are used to specify the ISO standards from which code values for other attributes, such as COUNTRYCODE in \<eadid\> and \<unitid\>, are taken.
	Some or all of the \<eadheader\> subelements can be used to display title page information. Alternatively, the \<eadheader\> can be blocked from display by setting the AUDIENCE attribute to "internal" and using the \<frontmatter\> \<titlepage\> elements to create a title page.
Example	Following are the required \<eadheader\> elements.

```
<eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <eadid>[...]</eadid>
 <filedesc>
  <titlestmt>
   <titleproper>[...]</titleproper>
  </titlestmt>
 </filedesc>
</eadheader>
```

Schematron	If the language of the description is not English, a parallel form of the title in English SHOULD be added. For instance, using another \<unittitle\> element with a *type* attribute

```
<s:rule context="ead:eadheader"> <s:assert role="SHOULD"
 test="ead:profiledesc/ead:langusage/@langcode = 'eng'">If the language of the
description is not English, a parallel form of the title in English SHOULD be
added. For instance, using another unittitle element with a type
attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>
```

Schematron	\<eadheader\> MUST contain a \<profiledesc\>element

```
<s:rule context="ead:eadheader">
```

	\<s:assert role="MUST" test="ead:profiledesc">eadheader MUST contain a profiledesc element\</s:assert> \</s:rule>
Schematron	A date of creation for the finding aid is welcome. The relevant element in \<date>, child of \<creation> \<s:rule context="ead:eadheader"> \<s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:creation/ead:date and normalize-space(ead:creation/ead:date)">eadheader COULD have a non-empty creation-date\</s:assert> \</s:rule>
Content model	
	\<content/>

Schema Declaration	element eadheader
	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  att.encodings.attributes,
	  att.relatedencoding.attributes,
	  attribute findaidstatus { text }?,
	  (eadid, filedesc, profiledesc?, revisiondesc?)
	}

\<eadid>

\<eadid> (EAD Identifier) A required subelement of \<eadheader> that designates a unique code for a particular EAD finding aid document.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.coded (@*countrycode*)

	mainagencycode	A code compliant with ISO/DIS 15511 Information and Documentation International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL).
		Status Optional
		Datatype
		Note Values should be supplied without the country code, which should be placed instead in the COUNTRYCODE attribute.
	url	An absolute (http://www.loc.gov/ead/ms99999.xml) or relative (ms99999.xml) Uniform Resource Locator.
		Status Optional
		Datatype
	urn	A Uniform Resource Name intended to serve as a persistent, location-independent, resource identifier.
		Status Optional
		Datatype
	publicid	A formal public identifier (FPI) that includes the owner name and an object name.
		Status Optional
		Datatype
		Note Defined in ISO/IEC 9070:1991, the FPI is intended to be universally unique, with each owner name being unique, and each object name unique within the name

		domain controlled by the owner.
identifier	A machine-readable unique identifier.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	

Contained by	EAD: eadheader
May contain	Character data only
Note	Two of the attributes, COUNTRYCODE and MAINAGENCYCODE, are required to make the <eadid> compliant with ISAD(G) element 3.1.1. MAINAGENCYCODE provides the ISO 15511 code for the institution that maintains the finding aid (which may not be the same as the institution that is the custodian of the materials described). COUNTRYCODE supplies the ISO 3166-1 code for the country of the maintenance agency. In addition to these two attributes, it is recommended that repositories also use at least one of the following attributes: URL, PUBLICID, or IDENTIFIER to make the <eadid> globally unique. PUBLICID should be a Formal Public Identifier, URL an absolute or relative address, and IDENTIFIER a machine-readable unique identifier for the finding aid file. (The proper syntax for PUBLICID is defined in ISO/IEC 9070:1991 Information technology -- SGML support facilities -- Registration procedures for public text owner identifiers.)
Example	<eadid xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" countrycode="us" mainagencycode="txu-hu" publicid="-//us::txu-hu//TEXT us::txu-hu::hrc.00001//EN" url="www.lib.utexas.edu/taro/hrc/00001.xml">hrc.00001</eadid>
Schematron	the <eadid> element MUST contain text. Most of the time, it is automatically generated by the archival tool. <s:rule context="ead:eadid"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="normalize-space(.)">eadid MUST contain text</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	<eadid> SHOULD contain a *mainagencycode* attribute, which provides (if applicable) the ISO 15511 code for the institution that maintains the finding aid. <s:rule context="ead:eadid"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="@mainagencycode"> eadid SHOULD contain a mainagencycode attribute </s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>
Schema Declaration	element eadid

```
element eadid
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.coded.attributes,
   attribute mainagencycode { text }?,
   attribute url { text }?,
   attribute urn { text }?,
   attribute publicid { text }?,
   attribute identifier { text }?,
   text
}
```

<edition>

<edition> (Edition) A version of the finding aid or other bibliographic entity. When used in the <editionstmt> subelement of the <eadheader> or in the <titlepage> subelement of <frontmatter>,

the <edition> refers to the version of the finding aid. A new edition of a finding aid represents substantial additions or changes and should supersede previous online versions. When used in a Bibliographic Reference <bibref>, the <edition> element specifies the version of a published work.

Module EAD
Attributes att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by EAD: bibref editionstmt titlepage unittitle
May contain EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Example <eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" audience="internal"
 langencoding="iso639-2b">
 <eadid>[...]</eadid>
 <filedesc>
  <titlestmt>[...]</titlestmt>
  <editionstmt>
   <edition>2nd ed.</edition>
   <p>This edition reflects substantial additions to the
      collection in 1994.</p>
  </editionstmt>
 </filedesc> . . . </eadheader>

Content model

    <content>
    </content>

Schema
Declaration element edition { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.phrase.bare)* }

<editionstmt>

<editionstmt> (Edition Statement) An optional subelement within the <filedesc> portion of the <eadheader> element that groups information about a finding aid edition by providing an <edition> element as well as a Paragraph <p> element for narrative statements.

Module EAD
Attributes att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by EAD: filedesc
May contain EAD: edition p
Example <eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" audience="internal"
 langencoding="iso639-2b">
 <eadid>[...]</eadid>
 <filedesc>
  <titlestmt>[...]</titlestmt>
  <editionstmt>
   <edition>2nd ed.</edition>
   <p>This edition reflects substantial additions to the
      collection in 1994.</p>
  </editionstmt>
 </filedesc> . . . </eadheader>
Example <filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <titlestmt>
  <titleproper>Etat sommaire des fonds d'archives privées du
     Centre historique des Archives nationales</titleproper>
  <subtitle> Séries AP et AB XIX</subtitle>
  <author>Instrument de recherche rédigé par Claire Sibille,
     avec la collaboration de George-Andrée Banguio et de

Violaine Le Nénaon, sous la direction de Christine
Nougaret</author>
   </titlestmt>
   <editionstmt>
    <edition> Première édition</edition>
   </editionstmt>
   <publicationstmt>
    <publisher>Centre historique des Archives nationales de
France (CHAN)</publisher>
    <address>
     <addressline>60 rue des Francs-Bourgeois</addressline>
     <addressline>F-75141 PARIS CEDEX 03</addressline>
    </address>
    <date>mai 2001</date>
   </publicationstmt>
  </filedesc>

Content model

    <content>
    </content>

Schema Declaration   element editionstmt { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (edition | p)+ }

<emph>

<emph> (Emphasis) A formatting element for marking words or phrases that are stressed or emphasized for linguistic effect. Use the RENDER attribute to specify the kind of emphasis, e.g., bold or italics.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.rendered (*@render*)
Member of	model.render
Contained by	EAD: abstract addressline archref author bibref bibseries container corpname creation date descrules dimensions edition emph entry event extrefloc famname function genreform geogname head head01 head02 imprint item label langmaterial language langusage legalstatus materialspec name num occupation origination p persname physdesc physfacet physloc publisher ref refloc repository resource runner sponsor subarea subject subtitle title titleproper unitdate unitid unittitle
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref emph expan extptr extref lb linkgrp ptr ref subtitle title
Note	When the content of an entire element should always be rendered in italics or some other display feature, use the style sheet functions instead of the <emph> element.
Example	Papers document Donald C. Stone's work with Ornstein and Swencionis on the <emph render="italic">est</emph> Outcome Project, and the development of his doctoral research, including his various publications on the human potential movement, up to the completion of his doctoral dissertation.

Content model

    <content>
    </content>

Schema Declaration

```
element emph
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.rendered.attributes,
   ( text | model.phrase.basic )*
}
```

<entry>

<entry> (Table Entry) A formatting element that designates the contents of a cell in a table. A cell is the intersection of a row and a column. The <entry> attributes control cell spanning, alignment of the contents, and the rules on the cell edges. The attributes can be specified for <entry> or inherited from the nearest of the following table elements: <table>, <tgroup>, <colspec/>, <tbody>, or <row>.

Module	EAD		
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)		
	align	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**left**
			right
			center
			justify
			char
	char	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	charoff	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	colname	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	colsep	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**1**
			O
	morerows	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	nameend	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	namest	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	rowsep	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**1**

O

valign	**Status**	Optional	
	Datatype		
	Legal values are:	**top**	
		middle	
		bottom	

Contained by EAD: row

May contain EAD: abbr address archref bibref corpname date emph expan extptr extref famname function genreform geogname lb linkgrp list name note num occupation origination persname ptr ref repository subject subtitle title unitdate unittitle

Note Three attributes are used together to force horizontal alignment on a specific character, such as a decimal point. The ALIGN attribute must be set to "char" (align="char"). The CHAR attribute should be set to the specific character on which the text will align (for example the decimal point, char="."). The CHAROFF attribute controls the position of the alignment by naming the percentage of the current column width that is to the left of the alignment character (for example, charoff="30").The extent of a horizontal span is determined by naming the first column (NAMEST) and the last column (NAMEEND) in the span.

By convention, the specified rule is printed or displayed to the right of the column. External rules are specified using the FRAME attribute of the <table> element, horizontal rules are specified using ROWSEP.

Example
```
<table xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" frame="none">
 <tgroup cols="3">
  <colspec colnum="1" colname="1"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <colspec colnum="2" colname="2"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <colspec colnum="3" colname="3"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <thead>
   <row>
    <entry colname="1">Major Family Members</entry>
    <entry colname="2">Spouses</entry>
    <entry colname="3">Children</entry>
   </row>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
   <row>
    <entry colname="1">John Albemarle
       (1760-1806)</entry>
    <entry colname="2">Mary Frances Delaney
       (1769-1835)</entry>
    <entry colname="3">John Delaney Albemarle
       (1787-1848)</entry>
   </row> . . . </tbody>
 </tgroup>
</table>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element entry
                     {
                       att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                       attribute align { "left" | "right" | "center" | "justify" | "char" }?,
                       attribute char { text }?,
                       attribute charoff { text }?,
                       attribute colname { text }?,
                       attribute colsep { "1" | "O" }?,
                       attribute morerows { text }?,
                       attribute nameend { text }?,
                       attribute namest { text }?,
                       attribute rowsep { "1" | "O" }?,
                       attribute valign { "top" | "middle" | "bottom" }?,
                       (text | (model.phrase.plus | address | list | note))*
                     }

\<event\>

\<event\> (Event) That part of a Chronology List Item \<chronitem\> which describes or names
something that happened. The \<event\> is paired with a \<date\> (a single date or date range) and
can be grouped with other events in \<eventgrp\>, if multiple events need to be associated with the
same \<date\>.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by   EAD: chronitem eventgrp
May contain   EAD: abbr address archref bibref blockquote chronlist corpname date emph
                    expan extptr extref famname function genreform geogname lb linkgrp list name
                    note num occupation origination persname ptr ref repository subject subtitle table
                    title unitdate unittitle
Note   See related element Chronology List \<chronlist\>.
Example   \<bioghist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\>
                     \<head\>Biographical Note\</head\>
                     \<chronlist\>
                      \<chronitem\>
                       \<date\>1892, May 7\</date\>
                       \<event\>Born, \<geogname\>Glencoe, Ill.\</geogname\>
                       \</event\>
                      \</chronitem\>
                      \<chronitem\>
                       \<date\>1915\</date\>
                       \<event\>A.B., \<corpname\>Yale University, \</corpname\>New
                          Haven, Conn.\</event\>
                      \</chronitem\>
                      \<chronitem\>
                       \<date\>1916\</date\>
                       \<event\>Married \<persname\>Ada Hitchcock\</persname\>
                       \</event\>
                      \</chronitem\>

```
      <chronitem>
       <date>1917-1919</date>
       <event>Served in <corpname>United States
           Army</corpname>
        </event>
       </chronitem>
      </chronlist>
     </bioghist>
```

Content model

```
      <content>
      </content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**   element event { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.para.content)* }

<eventgrp>

<eventgrp> (Event Group) An element within a Chronology List Item <chronitem> that bundles multiple <event>s associated with the same <date>.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by   EAD: chronitem
May contain   EAD: event
Note   See related element Chronology List <chronlist>.
Example   <bioghist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
```
      <head>Biographical Note</head>
      <chronlist>
       <chronitem>
        <date normal="19010718">1901 July 18</date>
        <event>Born, Holsterhausen, Westphalia, Germany </event>
       </chronitem>
       <chronitem>
        <date normal="1918">1918</date>
        <event>Member and active participant of Sokoly, Polish
            insurrection against the Germans</event>
       </chronitem>
       <chronitem>
        <date normal="1920">1920</date>
        <eventgrp>
         <event>Private, Polish Army, Polish-Russo
             War</event>
         <event>Graduated from Agricultural High School,
             People's University</event>
        </eventgrp>
       </chronitem> . . . </chronlist>
      </bioghist>
```

Content model

```
      <content>
      </content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**   element eventgrp { att.EADGlobal.attributes, event+ }

\<expan\>

\<expan\> (Expansion) A generic element to designate the full form of a word that often appears as an abbreviation or acronym. Use the ABBR attribute to supply the abbreviated form for indexing or searching purposes.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
	abbr An abbreviation for a word or phrase that is expressed in an expanded form in the text; used for searching and indexing purposes. Available only in the \<expan\> element.
	Status Optional
	Datatype
Member of	model.phrase.basic.norefs
Contained by	EAD: abstract archref bibref creation descrules dimensions emph entry event extrefloc item label langmaterial langusage materialspec origination p physdesc physfacet physloc ref refloc repository subtitle titleproper unitdate unitid unittitle
May contain	Character data only
Note	See also related element Abbreviation \<abbr\>.
Example	\<note xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\>
	\<p\>
	\<expan abbr="ALS"\>Autograph Letter Signed\</expan\>
	\</p\>
	\</note\>
Content model	
	\<content\>
	\</content\>
Schema Declaration	element expan { att.EADGlobal.attributes, attribute abbr { text }?, text }

\<extent\>

\<extent\> (Extent) A \<physdesc\> subelement for information about the quantity of the materials being described or an expression of the physical space they occupy. Includes such traditional archival measurements as cubic and linear feet and meters; also includes counts of microfilm reels, photographs, or other special formats, the number of logical records in a database, or the volume of a data file in bytes.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.typed (@*type*) att.labeled (@*label*)
	unit **Status** Optional
	Datatype
Contained by	EAD: physdesc
May contain	Character data only
Note	Repeat the element when more than one type or unit of extent is provided, such as, when both linear feet and quantity of containers are given. Use the UNIT attribute to indicate the measurement unit, e.g., "bytes" or "cubic meter."Use the \<dimension\> element when it is necessary to specify the size of the archival materials being described, for example, height and width.
Example	\<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="collection"\>
	\<did\>
	\<origination\>

```
            <persname encodinganalog="100"
             label="Creator:" source="lcnaf"> Franklin, George A. (George
               Albert).</persname>
            </origination>
            <unittitle>The George Franklin Papers, </unittitle>
            <unitdate type="inclusive">1928-1972</unitdate>
            <physdesc>
             <extent>100 boxes; </extent>
             <extent>50 linear feet</extent>
            </physdesc>
           </did>
          </archdesc>
```

Example
```
<c xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">
 <did>
  <physloc audience="internal">B:14:D</physloc>
  <container type="box">1</container>
  <container type="folder">1</container>
  <unittitle>Abbinger-Aldrich</unittitle>
  <physdesc>
   <extent>14 letters</extent>
  </physdesc>
 </did>
</c>
```

Content model
```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema
Declaration
```
element extent
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.labeled.attributes,
   attribute unit { text }?,
   ( text | m.phrase.basic )*
}
```

**** (Extended Pointer) An empty linking element that uses attributes to connect the EAD document to an external electronic object, which is not part of the materials being described. Examples include graphic representations of a repository's seal or logo, and pointers to an institution's web page.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*)
Member of	model.phrase.bare
Contained by	EAD: abstract addressline archref author bibref bibseries container corpname creation date descrules dimensions edition emph entry event extrefloc famname function genreform geogname head head01 head02 imprint item label langmaterial language langusage legalstatus materialspec name num occupation

origination p persname physdesc physfacet physloc publisher ref refloc repository runner sponsor subarea subject subtitle title titleproper unitdate unitid unittitle

May contain   Empty element

Note   Use the ENTITYREF or HREF attribute to identify the external object.Do not confuse with the Pointer <ptr/> element, which is an internal link for movement from one place in a finding aid to another place in the same finding aid.
While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.

Example   <frontmatter xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
  <titlepage>
   <titleproper>Inventory of the Rietta Hines Herbert Papers,
      1940-1969</titleproper>
   <author>Processed by: Debra Carter</author>
   <publisher>Schomburg Center for Research in Black Culture<lb/>
    <extptr linktype="simple"
      entityref="phyllis" title="Image of Phyllis Wheatley"
      actuate="onload" show="embed"/>
    <lb/> The New York Public
      Library</publisher>
   <date>August, 1977</date>

   <!--&schtp;-->
    <p> © <date>1999 </date> The New York Public Library, Astor,
      Lenox and Tilden Foundations. All rights reserved.</p>
   </titlepage>
  </frontmatter>

Content model
                     <content>
                     </content>

**Schema
Declaration**   element extptr { att.EADGlobal.attributes, att.xlink.attributes, empty }

<extptrloc/>

<extptrloc/> (Extended Pointer Location) The location of an Extended Pointer <extptr/> that is a resource in an extended link.

Module   EAD

Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*)

Member of   model.extended.els

Contained by   EAD: daogrp linkgrp

May contain   Empty element

Note   While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.

Content model

<content>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element extptrloc { att.EADGlobal.attributes, att.xlink.attributes, empty }

<extref>

<extref> (Extended Reference) A linking element that can include text and subelements as part of its reference to an electronic object that is external to the EAD document.

Module   EAD

Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id, @altrender, @audience, @encodinganalog*) att.xlink (*@label, @href, @type, @title, @from, @to, @role, @actuate, @show, @arcrole, @xpointer, @entityref, @target, @parent*)

Member of   model.refs

Contained by   EAD: abstract archref bibliography bibref creation descrules dimensions emph entry event item label langmaterial langusage materialspec origination otherfindaid p physdesc physfacet physloc ref relatedmaterial repository separatedmaterial unitdate unitid unittitle

May contain   EAD: archref bibref ref title

Note   Use the ENTITYREF or HREF attribute to identify the external object.Use the <ref> element to point to another location within the EAD document.

While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.

Example   <bioghist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <head>Chronology</head>
 <chronlist> . . . <chronitem>
   <date normal="199510">October 1995</date>
   <event>
    <extref linktype="simple"
     entityref="nobelsite" title="Nobel Prize eMuseum"
     actuate="onrequest" show="new">Awarded Nobel Prize in Physics by the
       Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences.</extref>
   </event>
  </chronitem> . . . </chronlist>
</bioghist>

Content model

<content>
</content>

Schema Declaration   element extref
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.xlink.attributes,
  (text | m.para.content.norefs | bibref | title | archref | ref)*
}

<extrefloc>

<extrefloc> (Extended Reference Location) The location of an Extended Reference <extref> that is a resource in an extended link.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*)
Member of	model.extended.els
Contained by	EAD: daogrp linkgrp
May contain	EAD: abbr address blockquote chronlist corpname date emph expan extptr famname function genreform geogname lb list name note num occupation origination persname ptr repository subject table unitdate unittitle
Note	While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.

Example	<relatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	  The Society also has records of other conservation
	   organizations in Minnesota.
	
	  <linkgrp linktype="extended">
	  <extrefloc href="http://www.someserver.edu/findaids/3270.xml">
	   <archref>Issak Walton League of Minnesota</archref>
	  </extrefloc>
	  <extrefloc href="http://www.someserver.edu/findaids/9248.xml">
	   <archref>Minnesota Audubon Council</archref>
	  </extrefloc>
	  <extrefloc entityref="FBWW">
	   <archref>Friends of the Boundary Waters
	     Wilderness</archref>
	  </extrefloc>
	  <extrefloc href="http://www.someserver.edu/findaids/23145.sgm">
	   <archref>Minnesota Emergency Conservation
	     Committee</archref>
	  </extrefloc>
	  </linkgrp>
	
	</relatedmaterial>

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element extrefloc
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.xlink.attributes,
   ( text | model.para.content.norefs )*
}
```

\<famname\>

\<famname\> (Family Name) The proper noun designation for a group of persons closely related by blood or persons who form a household. Includes single families and family groups, e.g., Patience Parker Family and Parker Family.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.access (@*source*, @*rules*, @*authfilenumber*, @*normal*) att.roled (@*role*)
Member of	model.access
Contained by	EAD: bibref controlaccess entry event extrefloc indexentry item label namegrp origination p physdesc physfacet ref refloc unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	All names in a finding aid do not have to be tagged. One option is to tag those names for which access other than basic, undifferentiated keyword retrieval is desired. Use of authorized forms is recommended to facilitate access to the names within and across finding aid systems. The \<famname\> element may be used in text elements such as \<p\>. To indicate a family name with major representation in the materials being described, nest \<famname\> within the \<controlaccess\> element.The ROLE attribute can be used to specify the relationship(s) of the name to the materials being described, for example, "compiler," "creator," "collector," or "subject." The NORMAL attribute can be used to provide the authority form of a name that has been encoded with \<famname\> in narrative text, e.g., within a paragraph. The AUTHFILENUMBER attribute can be used to identify a link to an authority file record that has more information about the name or cross references for alternative forms of the name and related names. Use the SOURCE attribute to specify the vocabulary from which the name has been taken and/or the RULES attribute to specify the descriptive rules followed when forming the name.
	See also the related elements \<controlaccess\>, \<corpname\>, \<persname\>, and \<name\>.
	The \<famname\> element is comparable to MARC fields 100, 600, 700.
Example	\<indexentry xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\>
	\<famname\>Hely-Hutchinson family\</famname\>
	\<indexentry\>
	\<genreform\> Pedigree, 20th cent.\</genreform\>
	\<ref linktype="simple" role="internal"
	target="EngC5769-f74" show="replace" actuate="onrequest"\>MS. Eng. c. 5769, fol. 74\</ref\>
	\</indexentry\>
	\</indexentry\>
Example	\<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="collection"\>
	\<did\>[...]\</did\> . . . \<controlaccess\>
	\<head\>Controlled Vocabulary Indexing Terms:\</head\>
	\<controlaccess\>
	\<head\>Subjects:\</head\>
	\<famname encodinganalog="600"
	source="lcnaf"\>Ferry
	family.\</famname\>
	\<geogname encodinganalog="651"
	source="lcsh"\>Ferry Field
	(University of Michigan)\</geogname\>
	\</controlaccess\>

```
            </controlaccess>
          </archdesc>
```

Content model
```
          <content>
          </content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element famname
```
          {
            att.EADGlobal.attributes,
            att.access.attributes,
            att.roled.attributes,
            ( text | model.phrase.bare )*
          }
```

\<filedesc>

\<filedesc> (File Description) A required subelement of the \<eadheader> that bundles much of the bibliographic information about the finding aid, including its author, title, subtitle, and sponsor (all in the \<titlestmt>), as well as the edition, publisher, publishing series, and related notes (encoded separately).

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: eadheader
May contain	EAD: editionstmt notestmt publicationstmt seriesstmt titlestmt
Note	This element has been modeled on a Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) DTD element and includes the following subelements, in this order: a required \<titlestmt>, an optional \<editionstmt>, an optional \<publicationstmt>, an optional \<seriesstmt>, and an optional \<notestmt>. The \<filedesc> provides information that is helpful for citing a finding aid in a bibliography or footnote. Institutions that catalog finding aids separately from the archival materials being described might use the \<filedesc> elements to build a basic bibliographic record for the finding aid.Do not confuse with the \<profiledesc> element, which describes the encoding of the finding aid. Do not confuse with \<archdesc> elements, which refer to the materials being described rather than the finding aid itself.
Example	\<eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">

```
 <eadid>[. . .]</eadid>
 <filedesc>
  <titlestmt>
   <titleproper>Guide to the Bank of Willows Records,
   <date>1880-1905</date>
   </titleproper>
  </titlestmt>
  <publicationstmt>

<!--&amp;hdr-cst-spcoll;-->
   <date>© 1999</date>
   <p>The Board of Trustees of Stanford University. All
      rights reserved.</p>
  </publicationstmt>
 </filedesc>
 <profiledesc>[. . .]</profiledesc>
```

```
                    </eadheader>
```
Example   `<filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
```
 <titlestmt>
  <titleproper>Inventory of the Otis Turner Papers,
    1978-1990</titleproper>
  <author>Processed by Hanna Bailey</author>
 </titlestmt>
 <publicationstmt>

<!--&amp;hdrscm;-->
  <p>© <date>2000</date> The New York Public Library. Astor,
    Lenox and Tilden Foundations. All rights reserved.</p>
 </publicationstmt>
</filedesc>
```

Content model
```
<content>
</content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**   element filedesc
```
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   ( titlestmt, editionstmt?, publicationstmt?, seriesstmt?, notestmt? )
}
```

`<fileplan>`

`<fileplan>` (File Plan) Information about any classification scheme used for arranging, storing, and retrieving the described materials by the parties originally responsible for creating or compiling them. A filing plan is usually identified by the type of system used, e.g., alphabetical, numerical, alpha-numerical, decimal, color-coded, etc. It is often hierarchical and may include the filing guidelines of the originating organization. Additional types include a drawing of a room layout or a scientific scheme.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of   model.desc.base
Contained by   EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12
                   descgrp fileplan
May contain   EAD: fileplan head
Note   Do not confuse with Other Finding Aid <otherfindaid> which contains references to additional descriptions of the material rather than descriptions of classification schemes by which the materials might still be arranged.In EAD Version 1.0 fileplan was a subelement of Adjunct Descriptive Data <add>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp> element can be used to replace <add> when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002.
Example   `<fileplan xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
```
 <head>File List</head>
 <note>
  <p>The list below outlines the classification system used
```

```
        for the central files of Vice President Mondale's
        office. This structure assigned alpha-numeric codes to
        primary subjects and to secondary and tertiary
        subdivisions thereunder.</p>
    </note>
    <fileplan>
     <head>AGRICULTURE (AG)</head>
     <list type="ordered">
      <defitem>
       <label>1</label>
       <item>Home Economics</item>
      </defitem>
      <defitem>
       <label>2</label>
       <item>Horticulture</item>
      </defitem>
      <defitem>
       <label>3</label>
       <item>Marketing</item>
      </defitem>
      <defitem>
       <label>4</label>
       <item>Price Support</item>
      </defitem>
     </list>
    </fileplan>
    <fileplan>
     <head>ARTS (AR)</head>
     <list type="ordered">
      <defitem>
       <label>1</label>
       <item>Languages</item>
      </defitem>
      <defitem>
       <label>2</label>
       <item>Museums</item>
      </defitem>
      <defitem>
       <label>3</label>
       <item>Music</item>
      </defitem>
      <defitem>
       <label>4</label>
       <item>Painting/Drawing</item>
      </defitem>
     </list>
    </fileplan>
   </fileplan>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration	element fileplan { att.EADGlobal.attributes, head?, (m.blocks | fileplan)+ }

\<frontmatter\>

\<frontmatter\> (Front Matter) A wrapper element that bundles prefatory text found before the start of the Archival Description \<archdesc\>. It focuses on the creation, publication, or use of the finding aid rather than information about the materials being described. Examples include a title page, preface, dedication, and instructions for using a finding aid. The optional \<titlepage\> element within \<frontmatter\> can be used to repeat selected information from the \<eadheader\> to generate a title page that follows local preferences for sequencing information. The other \<frontmatter\> structures, such as a dedication, are encoded as Text Divisions \<div\>s, with a \<head\> element containing word(s) that identify the nature of the text.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: ead
May contain	EAD: div titlepage
Example	\<frontmatter xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\>

```
<frontmatter xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <titlepage>
  <titleproper>Register of the Gibbons (Stuart C.) Papers,
  <date>1955-1964</date>
  </titleproper>
  <num>Collection number: Ms28</num>
  <publisher>San Joaquin County Historical Society and Museum <lb/>
   <extptr actuate="onload" show="embed"
    entityref="sjmlogo"/>
  <lb/> Lodi, California</publisher>

  <!--&amp;tp-cstoh;-->
  <list type="deflist">
   <defitem>
    <label>Processed by: </label>
    <item>Don Walker</item>
   </defitem>
   <defitem>
    <label>Date Completed: </label>
    <item>1997</item>
   </defitem>
   <defitem>
    <label>Encoded by: </label>
    <item>Don Walker</item>
   </defitem>
  </list>
  <p>© 2000 San Joaquin County Historical Society &amp;
    Museum. All rights reserved.</p>
 </titlepage>
</frontmatter>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema

Declaration   element frontmatter { att.EADGlobal.attributes, titlepage?, div* }

<function>

<function> (Function) Terms for the spheres of activities and processes that generated the described materials. Such terms often provide useful access points to the materials, especially for corporate, government, or institutional records. Examples include: collecting taxes and entertaining.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.access (*@source*, *@rules*, *@authfilenumber*, *@normal*)
Member of	model.access
Contained by	EAD: controlaccess entry event extrefloc indexentry item label namegrp p physdesc physfacet ref refloc unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	All functions mentioned in a finding aid do not have to be tagged. One option is to tag those functions for which access other than basic, undifferentiated keyword retrieval is desired. Use of controlled vocabulary forms is recommended to facilitate access to the functions within and across finding aid systems. The <function> element may be used in text elements such as <p>. To indicate a function with major representation in the materials being described, nest <function> within the <controlaccess> element.Use the SOURCE attribute to specify the vocabulary from which the term has been taken. The AUTHFILENUMBER attribute can be used to identify a link to an authority file record that has more information about the function or cross references for alternative forms of a function term.
	Do not confuse with <occupation>, which designates a type of work or business and is often associated with personal papers.
	See also the related access elements under <controlaccess>.
	The <function> element is comparable to MARC field 657.
Example	<controlaccess xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	<head>Index Terms</head>
	<p>These records are indexed under the following headings in the
	catalog of the Minnesota Historical Society. Researchers
	wishing to find related materials should search the catalog
	under these index terms.</p>
	<controlaccess>
	<head>Government Functions:</head>
	<function encodinganalog="657"
	source="aat">Law
	enforcing.</function>
	<function encodinganalog="657"
	source="aat">Convicting.</function>
	</controlaccess>
	</controlaccess>

Content model

Schema
Declaration   element function
　　　　　　{

```
                   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                   att.access.attributes,
                   ( text | model.phrase.bare )*
                }
```

\<genreform\>

\<genreform\> (Genre/Physical Characteristic) A term that identifies the types of material being described, by naming the style or technique of their intellectual content (genre); order of information or object function (form); and physical characteristics. Examples include: account books, architectural drawings, portraits, short stories, sound recordings, and videotapes.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.typed (@*type*) att.access (@*source*, @*rules*, @*authfilenumber*, @*normal*)
Member of	model.access
Contained by	EAD: controlaccess entry event extrefloc indexentry item label namegrp p physdesc physfacet ref refloc unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	All genres and forms of material mentioned in a finding aid do not have to be tagged. One option is to tag those \<genreform\> terms for which access other than basic, undifferentiated keyword retrieval is desired. Use of controlled vocabulary terms is recommended to facilitate access to the information within and across finding aid systems. The \<genreform\> element may be used in text elements such as \<p\>. To indicate a function with major representation in the materials being described, nest \<genreform\> within the \<controlaccess\> element. To associate a \<genreform\> term with more detailed physical characteristics, use \<genreform\>\> within the \<physdesc\> or \<physfacet\> elements.Use the SOURCE attribute to specify the vocabulary from which the term has been taken. The NORMAL attribute can be used to provide the authority form of a term that has been encoded with \<genreform\> in narrative text, e.g., within a paragraph. The AUTHFILENUMBER attribute can be used to identify a link to an authority file record that has more information about the term or cross references for alternative forms of a genre term.
	See also the related access elements under \<controlaccess\>.
	The \<genreform\> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.1.5 and MARC field 655, and, when used in conjunction with \<extent\>, to MARC field 300.
Example	\<controlaccess xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\>\<br\>\<head\>Index Terms\</head\>\<br\>\<controlaccess\>\<br\>\<head\>Physical Characteristics of Materials in the\<br\>Collection:\</head\>\<br\>\<genreform encodinganalog="655$a"\<br\>source="gmgpc"\>Architectural drawings\</genreform\>\<br\>\<genreform encodinganalog="655$a"\<br\>source="gmgpc"\>Photographs\</genreform\>\<br\>\</controlaccess\>\<br\>\</controlaccess\>
Example	\<scopecontent xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\>\<br\>\<head\>Scope and Content of the Collection\</head\>\<br\>\<p\>Although the bulk of the collection is composed of\<br\>\<genreform\>letters\</genreform\>, \<genreform\>portrait\<br\>photographs \</genreform\>appear in several series.\</p\>

Example

```
                </scopecontent>
                <c01 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="series">
                 <did>[...]</did>
                 <c02 level="file">
                  <did>
                   <unittitle>Diaries, </unittitle>
                   <unitdate type="inclusive">1820-1864</unitdate>
                   <physdesc>
                    <extent>14
                    </extent>
                    <genreform>diaries</genreform> bound in
                   <physfacet type="cover material">red
                        leather</physfacet>
                   </physdesc>
                  </did>
                 </c02>
                </c01>
```

Content model

```
                <content>
                </content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**

```
                element genreform
                {
                   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                   att.typed.attributes,
                   att.access.attributes,
                   ( text | model.phrase.bare )*
                }
```

<geogname>

<geogname> (Geographic Name) The proper noun designation for a place, natural feature, or political jurisdiction. Examples include: Appalachian Mountains; Baltimore, Md.; Chinatown, San Francisco; and Kew Gardens, England.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.access (@*source*, @*rules*, @*authfilenumber*, @*normal*) att.roled (@*role*)
Member of	model.access
Contained by	EAD: controlaccess entry event extrefloc imprint indexentry item label namegrp p physdesc physfacet ref refloc unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	All names in a finding aid do not have to be tagged. One option is to tag those names for which access other than basic, undifferentiated keyword retrieval is desired. Use of controlled vocabulary names is recommended to facilitate access to the names within and across finding aid systems. The <geogname> element may be used in text elements such as <p>. To indicate a place name with major representation in the materials being described, nest <geogname> within the <controlaccess> element.The ROLE attribute can be used to specify the relationship(s) of the name to the materials being described, for example, "subject." The NORMAL attribute can be used to provide the authority form of a term that has been encoded with <geogname> in narrative text, e.g., within a

paragraph. Use the SOURCE attribute to specify the vocabulary from which the name has been taken and/or the RULES attribute to specify the descriptive rules followed when forming the name. The AUTHFILENUMBER attribute can be used to identify a link to an authority file record that has more information about the name or cross references for alternative forms of the name and related names. See also the related access elements under <controlaccess>.

The <geogname> element is comparable to MARC fields 651 and 752.

Example	`<controlaccess xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
	 `<head>Controlled Vocabulary Indexing Terms:</head>`
	 `<controlaccess>`
	  `<head>Subjects:</head>`
	  `<famname encodinganalog="600"`
	   `source="lcnaf">Ferry`
	    `family.</famname>`
	  `<geogname encodinganalog="651"`
	   `source="lcsh">Ferry Field`
	    `(University of Michigan)</geogname>`
	 `</controlaccess>`
	`</controlaccess>`

Content model	`<content>` `</content>`

Schema Declaration	element geogname
	{
	   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	   att.access.attributes,
	   att.roled.attributes,
	   (text | model.phrase.bare)*
	}

<head>

<head> (Heading) A generic element that designates the title or caption for a section of text, including a list. When a <head> is used, it should be the first subelement, followed by one or more other elements.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
	althead — An alternative short form of the heading element <head> that might be used, for example, to create a running header. **Status** Optional **Datatype**
Contained by	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 chronlist controlaccess custodhist daodesc descgrp did div dsc dscgroup fileplan index list odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial table userestrict
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	Do not confuse with the <listhead> subelements <head01> and <head02>, which designate headings for columns in a list. A <thead> element is used for column

heads in a table.

Example   <chronlist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <head>Publications List</head>
 <listhead>
  <head01>Publication Year</head01>
  <head02>Book Title</head02>
 </listhead>
 <chronitem>[...]</chronitem>
</chronlist>

Example   <bioghist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" id="PRO123">
 <head>Administrative History</head>
 <p>In October 1964, the incoming Labour government created new
   office of Secretary of State for Economic Affairs (combined
   with First Secretary of State) and set up the Department of
   Economic Affairs under the Ministers of the Crown Act 1964
   to carry primary responsibility for long term economic
   planning.</p>
</bioghist>

Content model
          <content>
          </content>

**Schema
Declaration**   element head
          {
            att.EADGlobal.attributes,
            attribute althead { text }?,
            (text | model.phrase.bare)*
          }

<head01>

<head01> (First Heading) A formatting element within <listhead> that designates the heading over the first column in a multicolumn list.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by EAD: listhead
May contain   EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note   Do not confuse with the generic <head> element, which designates a heading for
                  an entire list or other section of text. Do not confuse with the <thead> element,
                  which is used for column heads in a table.
Example   <chronlist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <head>Publications List</head>
 <listhead>
  <head01>Publication Year</head01>
  <head02>Book Title</head02>
 </listhead>
 <chronitem>
  <date type="publication">1928</date>
  <event>
   <title render="italic">The Happy Little
      Lamb</title>

```
        </event>
       </chronitem> . . . </chronlist>
```

Content model

```
        <content>
        </content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element head01 { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.phrase.bare)* }

<head02>

<head02> (Second Heading) A formatting element within <listhead> that designates the heading over the second column in a multicolumn list.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: listhead
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	Do not confuse with the generic <head> element, which designates a heading for an entire list or other section of text. Do not confuse with the <thead> element, which is used for column heads in a table.
Example	<chronlist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">

```
        <head>Publications List</head>
        <listhead>
         <head01>Publication Year</head01>
         <head02>Book Title</head02>
        </listhead>
        <chronitem>
         <date type="publication">1928</date>
         <event>
          <title render="italic">The Happy Little
             Lamb</title>
         </event>
        </chronitem> . . . </chronlist>
```

Content model

```
        <content>
        </content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element head02 { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.phrase.bare)* }

<imprint>

<imprint> (Imprint) Information relating to the publication or distribution of a work cited in a Bibliographic Reference <bibref> or <unittitle>. In both elements the place of publication, name of the publisher, and date of publication can be encoded as either plain text or wrapped in the <imprint> subelements <geogname>, <publisher>, and <date>. It is seldom, if ever, appropriate to use <imprint> in a citation for an unpublished work cited in a <bibref>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: bibref unittitle
May contain	EAD: date emph extptr geogname lb ptr publisher
Example	<bibref xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">

```
<title render="italic">Action For Outdoor Recreation For
  America.</title>, <imprint>
 <geogname>Washington, D.C.</geogname>: <publisher>Citizen's
    Committee For The Outdoor Recreation Resources Review
    Commission Report</publisher>, <date type="publication" normal="1964">1964
</date>. </imprint>
</bibref>
```

Content model
```
<content>
</content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**
```
element imprint
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   ( text | model.phrase.bare | publisher | geogname | date )*
}
```

<index>

<index> (Index) A list of key terms and reference pointers that have been assembled to enhance access to the materials being described. The <index> can also serve as a helpful alphabetical overview of subjects, correspondents, photographers, or other entities represented in the collection. This back-of-the volume <index> may provide hypertext links, or it may note the container numbers useful for locating the position in the finding aid where the indexed material appears.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: index
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist head index indexentry list listhead note p table
Note	The <index> is assumed to be text that has to be tagged, not text generated automatically from the encoded finding aid. In some cases, the <index> repeats terms and names found elsewhere in the finding aid. In other cases, such as in some literary manuscript collections, the <index> may be the only place where a name is listed, and the references point to one or more files, which include letters from that person or corporate body, but which are described only in general terms, e.g., "Correspondents T-Z."The <index> should contain <indexentry> elements, which consist of an access element, such as <name> or <subject>, followed by a Pointer <ptr/>, Pointer Group <ptrgrp>, or Reference <ref> element. Plain text cannot be used in an <indexentry>. If the <indexentry> elements are expected to provide access points other than basic keyword retrieval, use authority file terms to facilitate access to the information within and across finding aid systems. In EAD Version 1.0 <index> was a subelement of Adjunct Descriptive Data <add>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp> element can be used to replace <add> when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002.
Example	<index xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <head>Photographer Index</head> <p>Names of photographers and studios--and the cities and states

in which they operated--are usually noted as they appear on the photographs (usually stamped or written on the versos). Corporate names appear in direct order; personal names in inverted order (i.e., filed by surname). Rectos and versos of photographs were microfilmed to capture information exactly as it appears on the photographs. To locate a specific photographer/studio, a user should consider all possible forms of entry (corporate and personal), browse the index under these forms, identify which LOT(s) contain photographs by that photographer/studio, then browse the relevant LOT on the microfilm to locate specific photographs that bear the markings of the specific photographer/studio.</p>
```
<indexentry>
 <name>12th Air Force Photo:</name>
 <ref target="LOT13105"
  actuate="onrequest" show="replace">LOT 13105</ref>
</indexentry>
<indexentry>
 <name>15th Air Force Command:</name>
 <ref target="LOT13105"
  actuate="onrequest" show="replace">LOT 13105</ref>
</indexentry>
<indexentry>
 <name>324th Service Corp.:</name>
 <ref target="LOT13105"
  actuate="onrequest" show="replace">LOT 13105</ref>
</indexentry>
<indexentry>
 <name>A.L. Adams Photo Studio--Atlanta, Ga.:</name>
 <ref target="LOT13076"
  actuate="onrequest" show="replace">LOT 13076</ref>
</indexentry>
<indexentry>
 <name>AAA Agricultural Adjustment Agency by Cooper:</name>
 <ref target="LOT13121"
  actuate="onrequest" show="replace">LOT 13121</ref>
</indexentry>
</index>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element index
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  head?,
  model.blocks*,
  ( ( listhead?, indexentry+ ) | index+ )
}
```

\<indexentry\>

\<indexentry\> (Index Entry) A formatting element that pairs an index term with one or more linking elements. Each \<indexentry\> contains an access element, such as \<namegrp\> or \<subject\>; an optional \<note\> that can divide the entry into subcategories, e.g., "during office" and "family life"; followed by optional Pointer \<ptr/\>, Pointer Group \<ptrgrp\>, or Reference \<ref\> elements. Plain text cannot be used in an \<indexentry\>. If the \<indexentry\> subelements are expected to provide access points other than basic keyword retrieval, use controlled vocabulary terms to facilitate access to information within and across finding aid systems, with the SOURCE attribute to indicate which vocabulary provided the term.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: index indexentry
May contain	EAD: corpname famname function genreform geogname indexentry name namegrp occupation persname ptr ptrgrp ref subject subtitle title
Note	Use the Name Group \<namegrp\> element to bundle access element entries, e.g., several \<famname\> and \<persname\> elements, that share the same \<ref\>, \<ptr/\>, or \<ptrgrp\> element.Use the Pointer Group \<ptrgrp\> element to bundle several \<ref\> or \<ptr/\> links to a single access term. Use the \<ptr/\> element when no text is needed with the link. Use the \<ref\> element when text as well as a link are needed.

Example	\<index xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\>
	 \<indexentry\>
	  \<name\>12th Air Force Photo:\</name\>
	  \<ref target="LOT13105"
	   actuate="onrequest" show="replace"\>LOT 13105\</ref\>
	 \</indexentry\>
	 \<indexentry\>
	  \<name\>15th Air Force Command:\</name\>
	  \<ref target="LOT13105"
	   actuate="onrequest" show="replace"\>LOT 13105\</ref\>
	 \</indexentry\>
	\</index\>

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element indexentry
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   ( namegrp | model.access.title ),
   ( ptrgrp | ptr | ref )?,
   indexentry*
}
```

\<item\>

\<item\> (Item) A formatting element used in one of three contexts: as an entry in a simple, random, or ordered \<list\>; as part of a \<defitem\> inside a definition list; or as an entry within the \<change\> element. In the first instance, the \<item\> can be a number, word, or phrase. In a definition list, which is usually displayed as two columns, a \<defitem\> pairs a \<label\> with a corresponding

<item> containing text that defines, describes, or explains the terms or other text tagged as the <label>. In the <eadheader> <revisiondesc> <change> element, the <item> designates information about a revision to the finding aid and is often paired with a <date>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: change defitem list
May contain	EAD: abbr address archref bibref blockquote chronlist corpname date emph expan extptr extref famname function genreform geogname lb linkgrp list name note num occupation origination persname ptr ref repository subject subtitle table title unitdate unittitle
Note	Do not confuse with <chronitem>, which designates entries in a Chronology List <chronlist>.See also related elements <list>, <defitem>, and <change>.
Example	<eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" langencoding="iso639-2b"> <eadid>[...]</eadid> . . . <revisiondesc> <change> <date normal="19970505">May 5, 1997</date> <item>This electronic finding aid was updated to current markup standards by Sarah Taylor using a perl script. Updates included: eadheader, eadid, arrangement of did elements and their labels.</item> </change> </revisiondesc> </eadheader>
Example	<list xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="deflist"> <defitem> <label>ALS</label> <item>Autograph Letter Signed</item> </defitem> <defitem> <label>TLS</label> <item>Typewritten Letter Signed</item> </defitem> </list>

Content model

<content>
</content>

Schema
Declaration   element item { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.para.content)* }

<label>

<label> (Label) A formatting element that identifies the term or concept being described, defined, or explained in a Definition List Item <defitem>. The <defitem> can be thought of as an entry in a <list> that is usually displayed in two columns: <label> followed by <item>. Each list item <defitem> contains a term or concept (called a <label>) and a definition, description, or explanation of that <label> (called an <item>).

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: defitem
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref corpname date emph expan extptr extref famname function genreform geogname lb linkgrp name num occupation origination

persname ptr ref repository subject subtitle title unitdate unitttitle

Note Do not confuse with the attribute called LABEL, which identifies the kind of information in an element for public display in the did subelements.See also related elements <list> and <defitem>.

Example <list xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="deflist">
 <defitem>
  <label>ALS</label>
  <item>Autograph Letter Signed</item>
 </defitem>
 <defitem>
  <label>TLS</label>
  <item>Typewritten Letter Signed</item>
 </defitem>
</list>

Content model
<content>
</content>

Schema
Declaration element label { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.phrase.plus)* }

<langmaterial>

<langmaterial> (Language of the Material) A prose statement enumerating the language(s) of the archival materials found in the unit being described.

Module EAD

Attributes att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.labeled (*@label*)

Member of model.did

Contained by EAD: archref did

May contain EAD: abbr archref bibref emph expan extptr extref language lb linkgrp ptr ref subtitle title

Note Language of the material may also be recorded in coded form in the LANGCODE attribute in the <language> subelement using the ISO 639-2b three-letter language codes.Do not confuse with the Language Usage <langusage> element which specifies the language(s) in which the finding aid is written. See also the description for the <language> element.
The <langmaterial> element is comparable to the ISAD(G) data element 3.4.3 and MARC field 546.

Example <c01 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="series">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Correspondence, </unittitle>
  <unitdate type="inclusive">1854-1902. </unitdate>
  <physdesc>4 boxes</physdesc>
  <langmaterial>Correspondence in <language>French, </language>
   <language>German, </language>and
  <language>English.</language>
  </langmaterial>
 </did>
</c01>

Example <eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" langencoding="iso639-2b">[...]</eadheader>

```
<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="fonds">
 <did> . . . <langmaterial>Texte <language langcode="ara">arabe</language> et t
raduction <language langcode="fre">française</language> par Lacroix fils
  </langmaterial>
 </did> . . . </archdesc>
```

Example
```
<did xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <unitid label="Reference Code">DL 42</unitid>
 <unittitle label="Title">Duchy of Lancaster: Cartularies,
  Enrolments, Surveys and other Miscellaneous
  Books</unittitle>
 <unitdate label="Creation Dates"
  type="inclusive">13th Century
   -1894</unitdate>
 <langmaterial label="Language(s)">
  <language langcode="eng">English</language>, <language langcode="fre">Fre
nch</language> and <language langcode="lat">Latin</language>
 </langmaterial>
</did>
```

Schematron
```
<langmaterial> COULD contain a <language> element.
<s:rule context="ead:langmaterial">
<s:assert role="COULD" test="ead:language">langmaterial COULD have a
language sub element</s:assert> </s:rule>
```

Content model

```
<content/>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element langmaterial
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.labeled.attributes,
   ( text | model.phrase.basic | language )*
}
```

<language>

<language> (Language) A subelement of <langusage> within the <profiledesc> portion of the <eadheader> that specifies the language or communication system in which the finding aid is written. For bilingual or multilingual finding aids, either identify each language in a separate <language> element, or mention only the predominant language. The LANGCODE attribute can be used to provide the three-letter ISO 639-2b code for the language.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.langcode
                    (@*langcode*) att.scriptcode (@*scriptcode*)
Contained by   EAD: langmaterial langusage
May contain   EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note   Also a subelement of <langmaterial> within <did>, where it specifies the language
                    of the materials being described. In this instance, the LANGCODE attribute may
                    be used to provide the three-letter ISO 639-2b code which is the equivalent of the
                    MARC 041 field.The SCRIPTCODE attribute may be used to specify the ISO
                    15924 code for the script in which the language is written.
Example   <eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" langencoding="iso639-2b">
                     <eadid>[...]</eadid>

```
                    <filedesc>[...]</filedesc>
                    <profiledesc>
                     <creation>[...]</creation>
                     <langusage>Bilingual finding aid written in <language langcode="fre">French</la
                    nguage> and <language langcode="eng">English.</language>
                     </langusage>
                    </profiledesc>
                   </eadheader>
```

Example
```
                   <c01 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="series">
                    <did>
                     <unittitle>Correspondence, </unittitle>
                     <unitdate type="inclusive">1854-1902.</unitdate>
                     <physdesc>4 boxes</physdesc>
                     <langmaterial>Correspondence in <language>French, </language>
                      <language>German, </language>and
                     <language>English.</language>
                     </langmaterial>
                    </did>
                   </c01>
```

Schematron   <language> MUST have a *langcode* attribute. See also the rule on *langcode* and ISO 639: ISO639rule
```
                   <s:rule context="ead:language">
                   <s:assert role="MUST" test="@langcode">language MUST have a langcode
                   attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>
```

Schematron   <language> MUST have a *scriptcode* attribute. See also the rule on *scriptcode* and ISO 15924: ISO15924rule
```
                   <s:rule context="ead:language">
                   <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="@scriptcode">language SHOULD have a
                   scriptcode attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>
```

Content model
```
                   <content/>
```

**Schema
Declaration**   element language
```
                   {
                     att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                     att.langcode.attributes,
                     att.scriptcode.attributes,
                     ( text | model.phrase.bare )*
                   }
```

<langusage>

<langusage> (Language Usage) An optional subelement within the <profiledesc> portion of the <eadheader> that provides a statement about languages, sublanguages, and dialects represented in an encoded finding aid. The language(s) in which the finding aid is written can be further specified using the <language> subelement within <langusage>. For bilingual or multilingual finding aids, either identify each language in a separate <language> element, or mention only the predominant language.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by EAD: profiledesc

May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref emph expan extptr extref language lb linkgrp ptr ref subtitle title
Note	The <langusage> element is modeled on a Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) DTD element.
Example	<eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" langencoding="iso639-2b"> <eadid>[...]</eadid> <filedesc>[...]</filedesc> <profiledesc> <creation>[...]</creation> <langusage>Bilingual finding aid written in <language langcode="fre">French</language> and <language langcode="eng">English.</language> </langusage> </profiledesc> </eadheader>
Content model	<content> </content>
Schema Declaration	element langusage { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.phrase.basic | language)* }

<lb/>

<lb/> (Line Break) An empty formatting element that forces text to start on a new line at a point chosen by the author rather than a linewrap algorithm or style sheet. Use only when a line break is needed within an element, for example, within a <titlepage>. Use a style sheet to specify line breaks between elements.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.render
Contained by	EAD: abstract addressline archref author bibref bibseries container corpname creation date descrules dimensions edition emph entry event extrefloc famname function genreform geogname head head01 head02 imprint item label langmaterial language langusage legalstatus materialspec name num occupation origination p persname physdesc physfacet physloc publisher ref refloc repository resource runner sponsor subarea subject subtitle title titleproper unitdate unitid unittitle
May contain	Empty element
Example	<publisher xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> San Joaquin County Historical Society and Museum <lb/> <extptr actuate="onload" show="embed" entityref="sjmlogo"/> <lb/> Lodi, California </publisher>
Content model	<content> </content>

Schema

Declaration	element lb { att.EADGlobal.attributes, empty }

<legalstatus>

<legalstatus> (Legal Status) The statutorily-defined status of the materials being described in the encoded finding aid, as, for example, defined by the Public Records Act of 1958 in the United Kingdom.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*)
Contained by	EAD: accessrestrict
May contain	EAD: date emph extptr lb ptr
Note	The <legalstatus> element is comparable to the ISAD(G) data element 3.4.1 and MARC field 506.
Example	<did xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <unitid label="Reference Code">PREM 8</unitid> <unittitle label="Title">Prime Minister's Office: Correspondence and Papers</unittitle> <unitdate label="Creation Dates" type="inclusive">1935-1951</unitdate> </did> <accessrestrict xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <legalstatus>Public Record(s)</legalstatus> </accessrestrict>
Content model	
	<content> </content>

Schema Declaration	element legalstatus
	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  att.typed.attributes,
	  (text | model.phrase.bare | date)*
	}

<linkgrp>

<linkgrp> (Linking Group) A wrapper element that contains two or more linking elements which form an extended link group so as to enable a set of multidirectional, out-of-line links.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*)
Member of	model.refs
Contained by	EAD: abstract bibliography creation descrules dimensions emph entry event item label langmaterial langusage materialspec origination otherfindaid p physdesc physfacet physloc relatedmaterial repository separatedmaterial unitdate unitid unittitle
May contain	EAD: arc extptrloc extrefloc ptrloc refloc resource
Example	<relatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <p>The Society also has records of other conservation

```
              organizations in Minnesota.</p>
            <p>
             <linkgrp linktype="extended">
              <extrefloc href="http://www.someserver.edu/findaids/3270.xml">
               <archref>Issak Walton League of Minnesota</archref>
              </extrefloc>
              <extrefloc href="http://www.someserver.edu/findaids/9248.xml">
               <archref>Minnesota Audubon Council</archref>
              </extrefloc>
              <extrefloc entityref="FBWW">
               <archref>Friends of the Boundary Waters
                  Wilderness</archref>
              </extrefloc>
              <extrefloc href="http://www.someserver.edu/findaids/23145.sgm">
               <archref>Minnesota Emergency Conservation
                  Committee</archref>
              </extrefloc>
             </linkgrp>
            </p>
           </relatedmaterial>
```

Content model

```
           <content>
           </content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element linkgrp
                    {
                       att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                       att.xlink.attributes,
                       model.extended.els+
                    }

<list>

<list> (List) A formatting element that contains a series of words or numerals (called <item>s) separated from one another and arranged in a linear, often vertical sequence.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)

	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
		Derived from att.typed
		Status Optional
		Datatype

Member of	model.inter.noquote
Contained by	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist blockquote controlaccess custodhist daodesc descgrp div dsc dscgroup entry event extrefloc index item note odd originalsloc otherfindaid p phystech prefercite processinfo ref refloc relatedmaterial revisiondesc scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict
May contain	EAD: defitem head item listhead
Note	The TYPE attribute is used to identify and format the list. The choices are: "simple," "deflist," "marked," and "ordered." In a "simple" list, <item>s are not

numbered or bulleted. In a "deflist" or definition list, each <defitem> pairs a <label> with a corresponding <item> containing the text that defines, describes, or explains the term or other text tagged as the <label>. In a "marked" list, the sequence of the list items is not critical, and a bullet, box, dash, or other character is displayed at the beginning of each <item>. In an "ordered" list, the sequence of the list <item>s is important, and each list <item> is lettered or numbered.See also the related elements <defitem> and <item>.

Example	`<bibliography xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
	`<head>Major Works of Archibald MacLeish</head>`
	`<list type="ordered" numeration="arabic">`
	`<item>`
	`<bibref>`
	`<imprint>`
	`<date>1924</date>`
	`</imprint>`
	`<title render="italic">The Happy Marriage,`
	`  and Other Poems</title> (Boston and New York:`
	`  Houghton Mifflin. 79 pp.) </bibref>`
	`</item>`
	`<item>`
	`<bibref>`
	`<imprint>`
	`<date>1925</date>`
	`</imprint>`
	`<title render="italic">The Pot of Earth</title>`
	`  (Boston and New York: Houghton Mifflin. 44`
	`  pp.)</bibref>`
	`</item> . . . </list>`
	`</bibliography>`

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element list
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
   head?,
   ( item+ | ( listhead?, defitem+ ) )
}
```

<listhead>

<listhead> (List Heading) A formatting element that groups headings for columns in a definition, marked, or ordered list, Chronology List <chronlist>, or <index>. The headings are called <head01> and <head02>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: chronlist index list
May contain	EAD: head01 head02
Example	`<chronlist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`

```
              <head>Publications List</head>
              <listhead>
               <head01>Publication Year</head01>
               <head02>Book Title</head02>
              </listhead>
              <chronitem>[...]</chronitem>
             </chronlist>
```

Content model

```
              <content>
              </content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**   element listhead { att.EADGlobal.attributes, head01?, head02? }

<materialspec>

<materialspec> (Material Specific Details) Data which are unique to a particular class or form of material and which are not assigned to any other element of description. Examples of material specific details include mathematical data, such as scale for cartographic and architectural records, jurisdictional and denominational data for philatelic records, and physical presentation data for music records.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.typed (@*type*) att.labeled (@*label*)
Member of	model.did
Contained by	EAD: archref did materialspec
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref emph expan extptr extref lb linkgrp materialspec num ptr ref subtitle title
Note	The <matspec> element is comparable to MARC fields 254, 255, and 256.
Example	<c03 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">

```
              <did> . . . <materialspec label="Mathematical Data">
                <materialspec label="Scale:">1:10000</materialspec>
                <materialspec label="Projection:">Universal transverse
                   Mercator projection</materialspec>
               </materialspec>
              </did> . . . </c03>
```

Content model

```
              <content>
              </content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**   element materialspec
```
                {
                   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                   att.typed.attributes,
                   att.labeled.attributes,
                   ( text | model.phrase.basic | num | materialspec )*
                }
```

<name>

<name> (Name) The proper noun or noun phrase designation for an entity that is difficult to tag

more specifically as a <corpname>, <famname>, <geogname>, <persname>, or <title>. The <name> element may be used in place of the more specific access elements when it is not known what kind of name is being described or when a high degree of precision is unnecessary. For example, the <name> element might be used in an <indexentry> when it is not clear if the name "Bachrach" refers to a person or a photographic corporation.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.access (*@source*, *@rules*, *@authfilenumber*, *@normal*) att.roled (*@role*)
Member of	model.access
Contained by	EAD: bibref controlaccess entry event extrefloc indexentry item label namegrp origination p physdesc physfacet ref refloc repository unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	All names in a finding aid do not have to be tagged. One option is to tag those names for which access other than basic, undifferentiated keyword retrieval is desired. Use of controlled vocabulary names is recommended to facilitate access to the names within and across finding aid systems. The <name> element may be used in text elements such as <p>. To indicate a name with major representation in the materials being described, nest <name> within the <controlaccess> element.The ROLE attribute can be used to specify the relationship(s) of the name to the materials being described, for example, "subject" or "photographer." The SOURCE attribute can be used to specify the vocabulary from which the name has been taken. The RULES attribute can be used to specify the descriptive rules followed when forming the name, such as AACR2R.
	See also the related access elements under <controlaccess>.
	The <name> element is comparable to MARC field 720, when it is not from a controlled vocabulary.
Example	```<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file"> <did> <unittitle> <name>Bartleby </name>barn purchase files, </unittitle> <unitdate>1799.</unitdate> <physdesc> <extent>3 items, </extent>heavily <physfacet>foxed.</physfacet> </physdesc> <note> Items relate to the purchase by Mr. Wigglethorpe from <persname normal="Brookes, Josiah">Jos. Brookes </persname>of a building colloquially known as the Bartleby barn. </note> </did></c02>```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element name
                  {
                      att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                      att.access.attributes,

```
att.roled.attributes,
( text | model.phrase.bare )*
}
```

<namegrp>

<namegrp> (Name Group) A formatting element used in an <indexentry> to group access element entries that share the same <ref>, <ptr/>, or <ptrgrp> element. A <note> is available to divide a name or term into subcategories, for example, "during office" and "family life."

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: indexentry
May contain	EAD: corpname famname function genreform geogname name note occupation persname subject subtitle title
Example	<index xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">

```
<head>Index to Correspondents and Recipients</head>
<indexentry>
 <corpname>Bach &amp; Bros.</corpname>
 <ref linktype="simple" target="NonC:21-2"
  show="replace" actuate="onrequest"> (In non correspondence)</ref>
</indexentry>
<indexentry>
 <namegrp>
  <corpname>Bacon and Lewis, Ltd.</corpname>
  <persname>Levering, Alexander M.</persname>
  <persname>Windom, Lucious</persname>
 </namegrp>
 <ref linktype="simple"
  target="Cres:18610408" show="replace" actuate="onrequest"> (1861 Apr. 8, AL
S, to W.W., re:
   inquiry into what to do with unsold flour)</ref>
</indexentry> . . . </index>
```

Content model
```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration element namegrp { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (model.access.title | note)+ }

<note>

<note> (Note) A generic element that provides a short statement explaining the text, indicating the basis for an assertion, or citing the source of a quotation or other information. Used both for general comments and as an annotation for the text in a finding aid. Not used when more specific content designation elements are appropriate, e.g., , <altformavail>, <archref>, or <scopecontent>. Do not confuse with Other Descriptive Data <odd> element, which is used within <archdesc> and <c> to designate information that is more than a short comment in a <note>.>

Module	EAD		
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.typed (@*type*) att.labeled (@*label*)		
	show	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	

	Legal values are:	embed	
		new	
actuate	**Status**	Optional	
	Datatype		
	Legal values are:	onload	
		onrequest	

Member of	model.desc.full model.did model.inter.noquote
Contained by	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal archdesc archdescgrp archref arrangement bibliography bioghist blockquote c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 controlaccess custodhist daodesc descgrp did div dsc dscgroup entry event extrefloc index item namegrp note notestmt odd originalsloc otherfindaid p phystech prefercite processinfo ref refloc relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist list note p table
Note	The placement of a <note> is dependent on the design of the document and the purpose of the <note>. A <note> may appear at the end of the text as endnotes, at the foot of a section as footnotes or embedded within the text. One or more <note> elements may be grouped in a <notestmt> element in the <filedesc> portion of the <eadheader>. The ACTUATE and SHOW attributes can be used to mask a <note> from display until it is requested by a finding aid user.The <note> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.6.1 and MARC field 500.

Example	`<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="collection">`
	`<did> . . . <repository label="repository"`
	`  encodinganalog="852">`
	`  <corpname>Library of Congress, <subarea>Prints and`
	`      Photographs Division, </subarea>`
	`  </corpname>`
	`    Washington, D.C. 20540 </repository>`
	`  <note>`
	`   <p>For information about Prints and Photographs Division`
	`      collections and services, see the Prints and`
	`      Photographs Division's Reading Room Home Page:`
	`   <extptr actuate="onrequest"`
	`    href="http://www.loc.gov/rr/print.htm" show="new"/>`
	`   </p>`
	`  </note>`
	`</did> . . . </archdesc>`

Content model	`<content>` `</content>`

Schema Declaration	`element note`
	`{`
	`   att.EADGlobal.attributes,`
	`   att.typed.attributes,`
	`   att.labeled.attributes,`
	` attribute show { "embed"
		"new" }?,`

```
            attribute actuate { "onload" | "onrequest" }?,
            model.blocks+
        }
```

<notestmt>

<notestmt> (Note Statement) An optional subelement within the <filedesc> portion of the <eadheader> that groups <note> elements, each of which contains a single piece of descriptive information about the finding aid. These <note>s are similar to the "general notes" in traditional bibliographic descriptions.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: filedesc
May contain	EAD: note
Note	The <notestmt> element is modeled on a header element found in the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI).
Example	In the California Digital Library, access points are put in the <eadheader> for system use in the resource directory. These same access points are also provided in <controlaccess> for public use.

```
<notestmt xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <note>
  <p>
   <subject source="cdl">Arts and Humanities--Performing
      Arts--Dance</subject>
   <subject source="cdl">Arts and Humanities--Performing
      Arts--Theater</subject>
  </p>
 </note>
</notestmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element notestmt { att.EADGlobal.attributes, note+ }

<num>

<num> (Number) A generic element for numeric information in any form. The <num> element is used only when it is necessary to display a number in a special way, or to identify it with a TYPE attribute. For example, an accession number in the <acqinfo> element might be designated as *<num type="accession">*. A publication number might be designated as <publicationstmt> ... <num>no. 42*</num>* ...

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.typed (@*type*)
Member of	model.data
Contained by	EAD: bibref bibseries entry event extrefloc item label materialspec p publicationstmt ref refloc seriesstmt subtitle title titlepage titleproper unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	Do not confuse with <container>, <unitid>, or <eadid>, which may also consist of numeric information.

Example	`<filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
	`<titlestmt>[...]</titlestmt>`
	`<seriesstmt>`
	`<titleproper encodinganalog="440$a">Archival Inventories and`
	`Guides of the World; </titleproper>`
	`<num encodinganalog="440$v">no. 148</num>`
	`</seriesstmt>`
	`</filedesc>`

Example	`<acqinfo xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
	`<p>The collection (Donor No. <num type="donor">8338</num>) was`
	`donated by <persname role="donor">Vonda Thomas`
	`</persname>and <persname role="donor"> Francine Farrow`
	`</persname>in March 1995.</p>`
	`</acqinfo>`

Content model	`<content>` `</content>`

Schema
Declaration
	element num
	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  att.typed.attributes,
	  (text | model.phrase.bare)*
	}

<occupation>

<occupation> (Occupation) A term identifying a type of work, profession, trade, business, or avocation significantly reflected in the materials being described.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.access (*@source*, *@rules*, *@authfilenumber*, *@normal*)
Member of	model.access
Contained by	EAD: controlaccess entry event extrefloc indexentry item label namegrp p physdesc physfacet ref refloc unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	All occupations in a finding aid do not have to be tagged. One option is to tag those occupations for which access other than basic, undifferentiated keyword retrieval is desired. Use of controlled vocabulary forms is recommended to facilitate access to occupations within and across finding aid systems. The <occupation> element may be used in text elements such as <p>. To indicate an occupation with major representation in the described materials, nest <occupation> within the <controlaccess> element.Use the SOURCE attribute to specify the vocabulary from which the term has been taken. The NORMAL attribute can be used to provide the authority form of a term that has been encoded with <occupation> in narrative text, e.g., within a paragraph. The AUTHFILENUMBER attribute can be used to identify a link to an authority file record that has more information about the occupation. Do not confuse with <function>, which designates the spheres of activities and processes that generated the described materials, e.g., collecting taxes or entertaining.

Do not confuse with the ROLE attribute available on the various name elements, e.g., <corpname>, <persname>, <famname>, etc., which may be used to specify the relationship of a name to the described materials, e.g., "compiler," "creator," "collector," or "subject."

See also the related access terms under <controlaccess>.

The <occupation> element is comparable to MARC field 656.

Example
```
<controlaccess xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <head>Selected Search Terms</head>
 <controlaccess>
  <head>Occupations:</head>
  <occupation encodinganalog="656">Dramatists</occupation>
  <occupation encodinganalog="656">Librarians of
    Congress</occupation>
  <occupation encodinganalog="656">Poets</occupation>
  <occupation encodinganalog="656">Public
    officers</occupation>
 </controlaccess>
</controlaccess>
```

Content model
```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration
```
element occupation
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.access.attributes,
   ( text | model.phrase.bare )*
}
```

<odd>

<odd> (Other Descriptive Data) An element for information about the described materials that is not easily incorporated into one of the other named elements within <archdesc> and <c>.

Module   EAD

Attributes   att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.typed (@*type*)

Member of   model.desc.base

Contained by   EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp odd

May contain   EAD: address blockquote chronlist dao daogrp head list note odd p table

Note   When converting finding aids to an ideal EAD markup, some shifting of text or addition of data may be necessary to conform to the DTD's sequencing of elements and the consignment of certain elements to specific settings. The <odd> element helps to minimize conversion difficulties by designating, as "other," information that does not fit easily into one of EAD's more distinct categories.Some situations in which <odd> may be used are when the information does not correspond to another element's definition; when the information is of such mixed content as to make a single classification difficult; and when shifting the information to permit more specific content designation would be too costly or burdensome for the finding aid encoder. The first situation may occur especially when additional narrative description is required beyond

what is included in the <bioghist> and <scopecontent> elements, such as when the finding aid is describing a computer file. Applying the *type* and *encodinganalog* attributes may help provide additional content specification in situations where the unspecified <odd> is used.

Despite its wide availability under <archdesc> and <c>, the <odd> element should be used with restraint and only after carefully considering the consequences that unspecified content designation poses for searching, retrieving, and displaying information in a networked environment.

The <odd> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.6.1 and MARC field 500.

Example   Note: The Public Record Office of the United Kingdom uses a 7 level system of intellectual units devised specifically for that repository. In that system "division" is the equivalent of "subfonds" and "class" is the equivalent of "series."

```
<c01 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="otherlevel"
 otherlevel="division">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Records of the Industrial Division</unittitle>
  <origination>
   <corpname>Department of Economic Affairs, Industrial
      Group; </corpname>
   <corpname>Department of Economic Affairs, Industrial
      Division; </corpname>
   <corpname>Department of Economic Affairs, Industrial
      Policy; Division </corpname>
   <corpname>Department of Economic Affairs, Industrial
      Prices and Incomes Department; </corpname>
  </origination>
  <unitdate>1949-1969</unitdate>
  <physdesc>
   <extent>2 </extent>
   <genreform>classes</genreform>
  </physdesc>
 </did>
 <scopecontent>[...]</scopecontent>
 <bioghist>[...]</bioghist>
 <controlaccess>[...]</controlaccess>
 <odd>
  <list type="simple">
   <item>Department of Economic Affairs: Industrial Policy
      Group: Registered Files (1-IG and 2-IG Series) <ref actuate="onrequest" targ
et="ew26"
     show="new">EW
       26</ref>
   </item>
   <item>Department of Economic Affairs: Industrial
      Division and Industrial Policy Division: Registered
      Files (IA Series) <ref actuate="onrequest" target="ew27"
     show="new">EW 27</ref>
   </item>
  </list>
 </odd>
</c01>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**
```
element odd
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   head?,
   ( model.blocks | dao | daogrp | odd )+
}
```

<originalsloc>

<originalsloc> (Location of Originals) Information about the existence, location, availability, and/or the destruction of originals where the unit described consists of copies.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.typed (@*type*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp originalsloc
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist head list note originalsloc p table
Note	Do not confuse <originalsloc> with Alternative Form Available <altformavail>, which is used to encode information about copies of the material being described.The <originalsloc> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.5.1 and MARC field 535.

Example	```<c01 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">```
	 ``` <did>```
	 ``` <unittitle>Dream diary, </unittitle>```
	 ``` <unitdate normal="1947/1948">1947-48</unitdate>```
	 ``` </did>```
	 ``` <originalsloc>```
	 ``` File contains photocopies of original still held by the```
	 ``` donor. ```
	 ``` </originalsloc>```
	 ```</c01>```

Example	```<c01 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="series">```
	 ``` <did>[...]</did>```
	 ``` <originalsloc>```
	 ``` Originals destroyed after microfilming, 1981. ```
	 ``` </originalsloc>```
	 ```</c01>```

Example	```<c03 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">```
	 ``` <did>[...]</did>```
	 ``` <originalsloc>```
	 ``` Original glass plate negatives are held by the Bailly```
	 ``` family, Lunenburg, Nova Scotia. ```
	 ``` </originalsloc>```
	 ```</c03>```

Schematron	If the element <originalsloc> is not empty, you COULD try to identify if copies are

present in the EHRI portal and make a link between the two descriptions.
<s:rule context="ead:originalsloc/ead:p"> <s:assert role="COULD"
 test="not(normalize-space(.))">If the element originalsloc is not empty, you
COULD try to identify if copies are present in the EHRI portal and make a link
between the two descriptions.</s:assert> </s:rule>

Content model

<content/>

Schema
Declaration   element originalsloc
{
    att.EADGlobal.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    head?,
    (model.blocks | originalsloc)+
}

<origination>

<origination> (Origination) Information about the individual or organization responsible for the creation, accumulation, or assembly of the described materials before their incorporation into an archival repository. The <origination> element may be used to indicate such agents as correspondents, records creators, collectors, and dealers. Using the LABEL attribute may help identify for a finding aid reader the role of the originator, e.g., "creator," "collector," or "photographer." It is also possible to set the ROLE attribute on the name elements that are available within <origination>, i.e., <corpname>, <famname>, <name>, and <persname>.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.labeled (*@label*)
Member of	model.data model.did
Contained by	EAD: archref did entry event extrefloc item label p ref refloc
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref corpname emph expan extptr extref famname lb linkgrp name persname ptr ref subtitle title
Note	The <origination> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.2.1 and MARC fields 100, 110, 700, and 710.

Example	<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="collection">
	 <did>
	  <origination label="Creator:">
	   <persname encodinganalog="100"
	    normal="Frisell, Toni" role="photographer">Toni
	      Frisell</persname>
	  </origination>
	 </did>
	</archdesc>

Example	<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="inventory" level="subgrp"> <did> <head>Overview of the Records</head> <repository label="Repository:"> <corpname>Minnesota Historical Society</corpname> </repository> <origination label="Creator:">

```
        <corpname>Minnesota. Game and
          Fish Department</corpname>
      </origination>
      <unittitle label="Title:">Game laws violation records, </unittitle>
      <unitdate label="Dates:">1908-1928</unitdate>
      <abstract label="Abstract:"> Records of prosecutions for and
        seizures of property resulting from violation of the
        state's hunting and fishing laws. </abstract>
      <physdesc label="Quantity:"> 2.25 cu. ft. (7 v. and 1 folder
        in 3 boxes) </physdesc>
      <physloc label="Location:"> See Detailed Description section
        for box location </physloc>
     </did>
    </archdesc>
```

Content model

```
      <content>
      </content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**   element origination
                   {
                     att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                     att.labeled.attributes,
                     (text | model.phrase.basic | corpname | famname | name | persname)*
                   }

\<otherfindaid\>

\<otherfindaid\> (Other Finding Aid) Information about additional or alternative guides to the
described material, such as card files, dealers' inventories, or lists generated by the creator or
compiler of the materials. It is used to indicate the existence of additional finding aids; it is not
designed to encode the content of those guides.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp otherfindaid
May contain	EAD: address archref bibref blockquote chronlist extref head linkgrp list note otherfindaid p ref subtitle table title
Note	Do not confuse with \<fileplan\>, which designates information about a particular type of access tool, known as a file plan, which explains the classification scheme used by the parties originally responsible for creating or compiling the described materials.The \<archref\> element may be used to give a formal citation to the other finding aid or to link to an online version of it.
	In EAD Version 1.0 \<otherfindaid\> was a subelement of Adjunct Descriptive Data \<add\>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group \<descgrp\> element, which can group any of the \<did\>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components \<dsc\>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The \<descgrp\> element can be used to replace \<add\> when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002.
	The \<otherfindaid\> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.4.5.

Example	```<otherfindaid xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">```
	``` <bibref>The Society has published an expanded guide to this```
	``` collection: <title>Guide to the Records of the American```
	``` Crystal Sugar Company. </title> Compiled by <persname role="author">David```
	```Carmichael; </persname>assisted by```
	``` <persname role="author">Lydia A. Lucas </persname>and```
	``` <persname role="author">Marion E. Matters.```
	``` </persname>St. Paul. Division of Archives and Manuscripts.```
	``` Minnesota Historical Society. 1985. </bibref>```
	```</otherfindaid>```

Content model	```<content>``` ```</content>```

Schema Declaration	```element otherfindaid```
	```{```
	``` att.EADGlobal.attributes,```
	``` head?,```
	``` (model.blocks | model.refs | otherfindaid)+```
	```}```

\<p\>

\<p\> (Paragraph) One or more sentences that form a logical prose passage. A paragraph may be a subdivision of a larger composition, or it may exist alone. It is usually typographically distinct: A line space is often left blank before it; the text begins on a new line; and the first letter of the first word is often indented, enlarged, or both. The \<p\> element is an important textual feature, which may be used inside of more than thirty other elements. The content model of a \<p\> provides access to thirty-three other elements, including reference and linking elements, formatting elements, controlled access elements, and some of the Descriptive Identification \<did\> subelements.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.blocks
Contained by	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist blockquote controlaccess custodhist daodesc descgrp div dsc dscgroup editionstmt index note odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo publicationstmt relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial seriesstmt userestrict
May contain	EAD: abbr address archref bibref blockquote chronlist corpname date emph expan extptr extref famname function genreform geogname lb linkgrp list name note num occupation origination persname ptr ref repository subject subtitle table title unitdate unittitle

Example	```<bioghist xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">```
	``` <head>Biographical Sketch</head>```
	``` John Ferguson Godfrey was born in Toronto on December 19,```
	``` 1942. He received a B.A. (Hons.) from Trinity College,```
	``` University of Toronto, in 1965, a M.Phil. degree from```
	``` Balliol College, Oxford University, England, in 1967, and a```
	``` D.Phil. degree from St. Anthony's College, Oxford```
	``` University, in 1975. He holds the title of Doctor of Sacred```
	``` letters (honoris causa), Trinity College (1987). ```

<p>Mr. Godfrey taught in the Department of History of Dalhousie
University, Halifax, first as Assistant Professor
(1970-1975), and then as Associate Professor (1980-1987). At
<corpname>King's College University, Halifax</corpname>
he held the position of Assistant Professor (1975-1976),
before becoming President and Vice-Chancellor
(1977-1987).</p>
</bioghist>

Content model

<content>
</content>

Schema
Declaration   element p { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.para.content)* }

<persname>

<persname> (Personal Name) The proper noun designation for an individual, including any or all of that individual's forenames, surnames, honorific titles, and added names.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.access (*@source*, *@rules*, *@authfilenumber*, *@normal*) att.roled (*@role*)
Member of	model.access
Contained by	EAD: bibref controlaccess entry event extrefloc indexentry item label namegrp origination p physdesc physfacet ref refloc unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	All names in a finding aid do not have to be tagged. One option is to tag those names for which access other than basic, undifferentiated keyword retrieval is desired. Use of controlled vocabulary forms is recommended to facilitate access to names within and across finding aid systems. The <persname> element may be used in text elements such as <p>. To indicate a personal name with major representation in the materials being described, nest <persname> within the <controlaccess> element.The ROLE attribute can be used to specify the relationship(s) of the name to the materials being described, for example, "compiler," "creator," "collector," or "subject." The NORMAL attribute can be used to provide the authority form of a name that has been encoded with <persname> in narrative text, e.g., within a paragraph. Use the SOURCE attribute to specify the vocabulary from which the name has been taken. The AUTHFILENUMBER attribute can be used to identify a link to an authority file record that has more information about the name or cross references for alternative forms of the name and related names. The RULES attribute can be used to specify the descriptive rules followed when forming the name, such as AACR2R. See also related elements <controlaccess>, <corpname>, <famname>, and <name>. The <persname> element is comparable to MARC fields 100, 600, and 700.
Example	<scopecontent xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <head>Scope and Content Note</head> <p>The papers of university professor and economist Mark Perlman span the dates 1952-1994, with most of the papers being dated between 1967 and 1989. The papers consist chiefly of professional correspondence to and from Perlman, indexes to these letters and a small number of subject files, but

include none of his personal papers. The collection
 documents Perlman's career as an economist and author at
 <corpname normal="Cornell University">Cornell,</corpname>
 <corpname normal="Johns Hopkins University">Johns
   Hopkins,</corpname> and the <corpname>University of
   Pittsburgh</corpname> and reflects his interest in work
 arbitration, trade unions, and the economics of public
 health. Among correspondents are many noted economists,
 including <persname normal="Abramovitz, Moses">Moses Abramovitz, </persname>
 <persname normal="Shubik, Martin"> Martin Shubik, </persname>and
 <persname normal="Bronfenbrenner, Martin"> Martin
   Bronfenbrenner. </persname> While many of the letters
 are personal in nature, others contain considerable
 information about Perlman's work, particularly in the years
 around the publication of his works <title render="italic">Judges in Industry: A Study of Labor Arbitration in
   Australia</title>
 <date type="publication">(1954)</date> and <title render="italic">Spatial, Regional, and Population
   Economics: Essays in Honor of Edgar M. Hoover</title>
 <date type="publication">(1972).</date> Additional
 correspondence relates to the publication of the <title render="italic">Journal of Economic
   Literature.</title>
 </p>
</scopecontent>

Example	<controlaccess xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	 <head>Subjects:</head>
	 <persname encodinganalog="600$a"
	 source="lcnaf">Reimann, Lewis
	   Charles, 1909-1978.</persname>
	 <persname encodinganalog="600$a"
	 source="lcnaf">Evans,
	   Thomas.</persname>
	 <persname encodinganalog="600$a"
	 source="lcnaf">Trippe, Matthew
	   J., 1915-1967.</persname>
	 <persname encodinganalog="600$a"
	 source="lcnaf">Elliot,
	   Raymond.</persname>
	</controlaccess>

Schematron	In the access points, Person names SHOULD be structured like this : Family name, given name <s:rule context="ead:controlaccess/ead:persname"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="[0-9a-zA-Z]+(,[0-9a-zA-Z]+)*">In the access points, Person names SHOULD be structured like this : Family name, given name</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	
	<content/>
Schema Declaration	
	element persname

```
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.access.attributes,
  att.roled.attributes,
  ( text | model.phrase.bare )*
}
```

<physdesc>

<physdesc> (Physical Description) A wrapper element for bundling information about the appearance or construction of the described materials, such as their dimensions, a count of their quantity or statement about the space they occupy, and terms describing their genre, form, or function, as well as any other aspects of their appearance, such as color, substance, style, and technique or method of creation. The information may be presented as plain text, or it may be divided into the <dimension>, <extent>, <genreform>, and <physfacet> subelements.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.labeled (@*label*) att.access (authfilenumber, normal, @*source*, @*rules*)
Member of	model.did
Contained by	EAD: archref did
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref corpname date dimensions emph expan extent extptr extref famname function genreform geogname lb linkgrp name occupation persname physfacet ptr ref subject subtitle title
Note	The <physdesc> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.1.5 and MARC field 300.
Example	<c01 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="series"> <did> <unittitle>Seizure Records, </unittitle> <unitdate>December 1908-January 1928.</unitdate> <physdesc>4 volumes and 1 folder.</physdesc> </did> </c01>
Example	<c xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="subseries"> <did> <unittitle>Documentary Movies, </unittitle> <unitdate type="inclusive">1952-1964</unitdate> <physdesc> <extent>2.5 linear ft.</extent> </physdesc> </did> </c>
Schematron	In the <did> element, <physdesc> SHOULD come with a non-empty <extent> <s:rule context="ead:physdesc"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="normalize-space(ead:extent[1])">a did SHOULD have a non-empty physdesc-extent, according to 17.3</s:assert> </s:rule>
Content model	<content/>
Schema Declaration	element physdesc { att.EADGlobal.attributes,

```
                    att.labeled.attributes,
                    att.access.attribute.source,
                    att.access.attribute.rules,
                    (
                       text
                     | model.phrase.basic
                     | dimensions
                     | physfacet
                     | extent
                     | date
                     | model.access
                    )*
                }
```

\<physfacet\>

\<physfacet\> (Physical Facet) A \<physdesc\> subelement for information about an aspect of the appearance of the described materials, such as their color, style, marks, substances, materials, or techniques and methods of creation.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.labeled (*@label*) att.typed (*@type*) att.access (authfilenumber, normal, *@source*, *@rules*) unit	

		Status	Optional
		Datatype	

Contained by	EAD: physdesc
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref corpname date emph expan extptr extref famname function genreform geogname lb linkgrp name occupation persname ptr ref subject subtitle title
Note	It is used especially to note aspects of appearance that affect or limit use of the materials. It generally should not be used for aspects of physical description that are covered more directly by the \<extent\>, \<dimensions\>, and \<genreform\> elements, although use of \<genreform\> may be appropriate for further specification within some \<physfacet\> instances.The TYPE attribute may be used to specify which aspect of the physical appearance is being designated, e.g., *\<physfacet type="color"\>*red*\</physfacet\>*
Example	\<physdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\> \<extent\>3 \</extent\> \<genreform\>daguerreotypes, \</genreform\> \<physfacet\>hand colored\</physfacet\> \</physdesc\>
Example	\<physdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\> \<physfacet type="material"\>Paper\</physfacet\> \<physfacet type="ruling"\>Ruled in red ink\</physfacet\> \<physfacet type="watermarks"\>Briquet 1234\</physfacet\> \<physfacet type="binding"\>Bound in 19th century red leather\</physfacet\> \</physdesc\>
Content model	

```
                <content>
                </content>
```

Schema

Declaration   element physfacet
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.labeled.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.access.attribute.source,
  att.access.attribute.rules,
  attribute unit { text }?,
  (text | model.phrase.basic | model.access | date)*
}

<physloc>

<physloc> (Physical Location) Information identifying the place where the described materials are stored, such as the name or number of the building, room, stack, shelf, or other tangible area.

Module	EAD		
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.labeled (*@label*) att.typed (*@type*)		
	parent	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	

Member of	model.did
Contained by	EAD: archref did
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref emph expan extptr extref lb linkgrp ptr ref subtitle title
Note	Do not confuse with <container>, which is used to identify the cartons, boxes, reels, folders, and other storage devices used to hold the described materials. Also do not confuse with <repository>, which is used to identify the institution or agency responsible for providing intellectual access to the described materials.Like all Descriptive Identification <did> subelements, the <physloc> element has a LABEL attribute which may be used to provide a readily understandable heading for the element's content. The TYPE attribute may also be used to identify the nature of the storage location. For security reasons, the AUDIENCE attribute value may be set to "internal" to shield public access to storage location information. The <physloc> element is comparable to MARC field 852.

Example	<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="inventory" level="subgrp">
	 <did>
	  <head>Overview of the Records</head>
	  <repository label="Repository:">
	   <corpname>Minnesota
	      Historical Society </corpname>
	  </repository>
	  <origination label="Creator:">Minnesota. Game and Fish
	     Department</origination>
	  <unittitle label="Title:">Game laws violation records, </unittitle>
	  <unitdate label="Dates:">1908-1928</unitdate>
	  Records of prosecutions for and
	     seizures of property resulting from violation of the
	     state's hunting and fishing laws.
	  <physdesc label="Quantity:"> 2.25 cu. ft. (7 v. and 1 folder
	     in 3 boxes) </physdesc>
	  <physloc label="Location:"> See Detailed Description section
	     for box location </physloc>

```
                  </did>
                 </archdesc>
Example           <c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">
                  <did>
                   <physloc>112.I.8.1B-2</physloc>
                   <container type="box">2</container>
                   <unittitle>
                    <unitdate type="inclusive">December 1908-July
                       1917 </unitdate>
                   </unittitle>
                  </did>
                 </c02>
```

Content model

```
                 <content>
                 </content>
```

Schema
Declaration

```
                 element physloc
                 {
                    att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                    att.labeled.attributes,
                    att.typed.attributes,
                    attribute parent { xsd:IDREFS }?,
                    ( text | model.phrase.basic )*
                 }
```

<phystech>

<phystech> (Physical Characteristics and Technical Requirements) A description of important physical conditions or characteristics that affect the storage, preservation, or use of the materials described. This includes details of their physical composition or the need for particular hardware or software to preserve or access the materials.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp phystech
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist head list note p phystech table
Note	The <phystech> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.4.4 and MARC fields 340 and 538.
Example	<c04 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="item"> <did>[...]</did> <phystech> Some oxydization of the aluminum layer. </phystech> </c04>
Example	<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="subseries"> <did>[...]</did> <phystech> <head>System Requirements</head> <p>48K RAM; Apple Disk II with controller; colour

```
        monitor</p>
     </phystech>
    </c02>
```

Content model

```
       <content>
       </content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**

```
element phystech
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   head?,
   ( model.blocks | phystech )+
}
```

<prefercite>

<prefercite> (Preferred Citation) Information about how users should identify the described materials when referring to them in published credits. Generally the repository or agent responsible for providing intellectual access to the materials will supply users with a recommended wording or prescribed format for structuring references to the described materials in bibliographies, footnotes, screen credits, etc.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp prefercite
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist head list note p prefercite table
Note	Do not confuse with <archref> or <bibref> which are used to cite and/or link to materials other than those described in the finding aid.In EAD Version 1.0 <prefercite> was a subelement of Administrative Information <admininfo>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp> element can be used to replace <admininfo> where it has been used as a wrapper when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002.
	The <prefercite> element is comparable to MARC field 524.
Example	<prefercite xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	<head>Preferred Citation</head>
	<p>[Identification of item], Arequipa Sanatorium Records, BANC
	MSS 92/894c, The Bancroft Library, University of California,
	Berkeley.</p>
	</prefercite>
Example	<prefercite xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	<p>item, folder title, box number, Charles Thomas, Jr. Papers,
	Bentley Historical Library, University of Michigan.</p>
	</prefercite>

Content model

```
       <content>
       </content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**   element prefercite
        {
          att.EADGlobal.attributes,
          head?,
          (model.blocks | prefercite)+
        }

\<processinfo\>

\<processinfo\> (Processing Information) Information about accessioning, arranging, describing, preserving, storing, or otherwise preparing the described materials for research use. Specific aspects of each of these activities may be encoded separately within other elements, such as \<acqinfo\>, \<arrangement\>, \<physloc\>, etc.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp processinfo
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist head list note p processinfo table
Note	In EAD Version 1.0 \<processinfo\> was a subelement of Administrative Information \<admininfo\>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group \<descgrp\> element, which can group any of the \<did\>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components \<dsc\>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The \<descgrp\> element can be used to replace \<admininfo\> where it has been used as a wrapper when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002.The \<processinfo\> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.7.1 and MARC field 583. A \<date\> within a \<processinfo\>\<p\> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.7.3.
Example	\<processinfo xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\> \<head\>Processing Information:\</head\> \<p\>These records were organized and cataloged in \<date\>1977\</date\> by Lydia Lucas.\</p\> \</processinfo\>

Content model

        \<content\>
        \</content\>

**Schema
Declaration**   element processinfo
        {
          att.EADGlobal.attributes,
          att.typed.attributes,
          head?,
          (model.blocks | processinfo)+
        }

<profiledesc>

<profiledesc> (Profile Description) An optional subelement of the <eadheader> that bundles information about the creation of the encoded version of the finding aid, including the name of the agent, place, and date of encoding. The <profiledesc> element also designates the predominant and minor languages used in the finding aid.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: eadheader
May contain	EAD: creation descrules langusage
Note	Do not confuse with <filedesc>, which bundles such bibliographic information as the title, author, publisher, edition, and publishing series of the finding aid.For newer finding aids, the author and encoder may be the same person or institution, but for most older finding aids, someone other than the author will be converting and encoding the document. The encoder should be listed in the <creation> subelement of <profiledesc>, while the author should be identified in the <titlestmt> subelement of <filedesc>.
	Within <profiledesc> the Descriptive Rules <descrules> element can be used to specify the descriptive code or guidelines followed in creating the finding aid.
Example	<eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" audience="internal" langencoding="iso639-2b">
	<eadid>[...]</eadid>
	<filedesc>[...]</filedesc>
	<profiledesc>
	<creation>Machine-readable finding aid and skeletal markup
	derived via a macro from WordPerfect file; markup
	checked and completed by Sarah Taylor. <date normal="19950423">April 23, 1 995.</date>
	</creation>
	<langusage> Finding aid written in <language langcode="eng">English.</langua ge>
	</langusage>
	<descrules>Finding aid prepared using <title render="italic">Rules for Archival D escription</title>
	</descrules>
	</profiledesc>
	</eadheader>
Schematron	<eadheader> MUST contain information on the language used in the EAD document: <langusage> <language> element
	<s:rule context="ead:profiledesc"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="ead:langusage/ead:language">eadheader MUST contain a langusage/language element</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	<eadheader> SHOULD contain a <creation> element
	<s:rule context="ead:profiledesc">
	<s:assert role="SHOULD" test="ead:creation">eadheader SHOULD contain a creation element</s:assert> </s:rule>
Schematron	<descrules> has a default value added automatically by EHRI. Therefore, the content of <descrules> will be overwritten
	<s:rule context="ead:profiledesc" role="SHOULD">
	<s:assert test="not(normalize-space(ead:descrules))">descrules has a default value added automatically by EHRI. Therefore, the content of descrules will be overwritten</s:assert> </s:rule>

Content model

           `<content/>`

Schema
Declaration   element profiledesc
           {
             att.EADGlobal.attributes,
             (creation?, langusage?, descrules?)
           }

`<ptr/>`

`<ptr/>` (Pointer) An empty internal linking element that uses attributes to provide for movement from one place in a finding aid to another place in the same finding aid. Unlike the `<ref>` element, the `<ptr/>` element cannot contain text and subelements to describe the referenced object.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.xlink (@*label*, @*href*, @*type*, @*title*, @*from*, @*to*, @*role*, @*actuate*, @*show*, @*arcrole*, @*xpointer*, @*entityref*, @*target*, @*parent*)
Member of	model.phrase.bare
Contained by	EAD: abstract addressline archref author bibref bibseries container corpname creation date descrules dimensions edition emph entry event extrefloc famname function genreform geogname head head01 head02 imprint indexentry item label langmaterial language langusage legalstatus materialspec name num occupation origination p persname physdesc physfacet physloc ptrgrp publisher ref refloc repository runner sponsor subarea subject subtitle title titleproper unitdate unitid unittitle
May contain	Empty element
Note	Do not confuse with `<extptr/>` which is used to connect the EAD document to an external electronic object, which is not part of the described materials.See related linking elements `<extptr/>`, `<extptrloc/>`, `<extref>`, `<extrefloc>`, `<linkgrp>`, `<ptrgrp>`, `<ptrloc/>`, `<ref>`, and `<refloc>`.
	While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.
Example	`<appraisal xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
	`<p>` This collection was re-appraised by repository staff in 1992 in order to facilitate use by weeding the collection of materials no longed deemed as having evidential or informational value. A list of materials removed from the collection after the re-appraisal is provided at the end of this guide. `<ptr linktype="simple" actuate="onrequest" show="replace" target="mss1982-062_add2"/>`
	`</p>`
	`</appraisal>`

Content model

           `<content>`
           `</content>`

Schema

Declaration   element ptr { att.EADGlobal.attributes, att.xlink.attributes, empty }

<ptrgrp>

<ptrgrp> (Pointer Group) A wrapper element for two or more Pointer <ptr/> or Reference <ref> elements used in an <indexentry>. Pointers and references are internal links that provide for movement from one place in the finding aid to another place in the same finding aid. When encoding an index in EAD, a name or entry is generally listed only once, followed by a <ptrgrp> containing the series of pointers and references that link the name or entry to the places in the finding aid where it appears. The <ptrgrp> prevents the name or entry from having to appear multiple times in the index.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by EAD: indexentry
May contain   EAD: ptr ref
Example   <index xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
                   <head>Correspondent Index</head>
                  <indexentry>
                   <persname>Adeltraud, Jerome</persname>
                  <ptrgrp>
                   <ref linktype="simple"
                    target="corresp19730824" actuate="onrequest" show="replace">
                    <date normal="19730824">1973 August 24</date>
                   </ref>
                   <ref linktype="simple"
                    target="corresp19740228" actuate="onrequest" show="replace">
                    <date normal="19740228">1974 February 28</date>
                   </ref>
                   <ref linktype="simple"
                    target="corresp19750315" actuate="onrequest" show="replace">
                    <date normal="19750315">1975 March 15</date>
                   </ref>
                  </ptrgrp>
                 </indexentry> . . . </index>

Content model

          <content>
          </content>

Schema
Declaration   element ptrgrp { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (ptr | ref)+ }

<ptrloc/>

<ptrloc/> (Pointer Location) The location of a pointer <ptr/> that is a resource in an extended link.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of   model.extended.els
Contained by EAD: daogrp linkgrp
May contain   Empty element
Note   While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD
                  linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical
                  and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use

XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration   element ptrloc { att.EADGlobal.attributes, empty }

<publicationstmt>

<publicationstmt> (Publication Statement) A wrapper element within the <filedesc> portion of <eadheader> for information concerning the publication or distribution of the encoded finding aid, including the publisher's name and address, the date of publication, and other relevant details.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: filedesc
May contain	EAD: address date num p publisher
Note	The <publicationstmt> may contain just text, laid out in Paragraphs <p>, or it may include the <publisher>, <address>, <date>, and <num> elements, which allow for more specific tagging of a publisher's name and address, the date of publication, and the number, if any, assigned to the published finding aid.
Example	<filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	<titlestmt>[...]</titlestmt>
	<publicationstmt>
	<date>1995</date>
	<publisher>Prints & Photographs Division<lb/>Library of Congress</publisher>
	<address>
	<addressline>Washington, D.C. 20540</addressline>
	</address>
	</publicationstmt>
	</filedesc>
Schematron	<eadheader> SHOULD specify a <publisher>
	<s:rule context="ead:publicationstmt">
	<s:assert role="SHOULD" test="ead:publisher">eadheader SHOULD specify a publisher</s:assert> </s:rule>

Content model

```
<content/>
```

Schema Declaration
```
element publicationstmt
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  ( publisher | date | address | num | p )+
}
```

<publisher>

<publisher> (Publisher) When used in the <publicationstmt> portion of <eadheader> and in the <titlepage> element in <frontmatter>, the <publisher> is the name of the party responsible for issuing or distributing the encoded finding aid. Often this party is the same corporate body

identified in the <repository> element in the finding aid. When used in the <imprint> section of a Bibliographic Reference <bibref>, the <publisher> is the name of the party issuing a monograph or other bibliographic work cited in the finding aid.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: imprint publicationstmt titlepage
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Example	<filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	<titlestmt>[...]</titlestmt>
	<publicationstmt>
	<date>1995</date>
	<publisher>Prints & Photographs Division<lb/>Library of
	Congress</publisher>
	<address>
	<addressline>Washington, D.C.
	20540</addressline>
	</address>
	</publicationstmt>
	</filedesc>
Example	
	<bibref>
	<persname role="author">Kinder, Dolores.</persname>
	<title>Once Upon a Lullaby.</title>
	<imprint>
	<geogname>New York: </geogname>
	<publisher>Wells & Sons, </publisher>
	<date type="publication">1931</date>
	</imprint>
	</bibref>

Content model

        <content>
        </content>

Schema Declaration   element publisher { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.phrase.bare)* }

<ref>

<ref> (Reference) An internal linking element that provides for movement from one place in a finding aid to another place in the same finding aid. Unlike the internal Pointer <ptr/> element, the <ref> element may contain text and subelements that identify or describe the referenced object. The <ref> element may be used in a variety of ways in an encoded finding aid. For example, a <ref> may provide a dynamic link from one Component <c> to another related Component <c> in the same way that See and See also references direct readers of paper-based finding aids. Or, a <ref> might be used to direct the reader from text in a scope and content note to a description of a Component <c> in a contents list.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*)
Member of	model.refs

Contained by	EAD: abstract archref bibliography bibref creation descrules dimensions emph entry event extref indexentry item label langmaterial langusage materialspec origination otherfindaid p physdesc physfacet physloc ptrgrp relatedmaterial repository separatedmaterial unitdate unitid unittitle
May contain	EAD: abbr address archref bibref blockquote chronlist corpname date emph expan extptr extref famname function genreform geogname lb list name note num occupation origination persname ptr repository subject table title unitdate unittitle
Note	While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.
Example	<index xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <head>Index to Correspondents and Recipients</head> <indexentry> <corpname>Bach & Bros.</corpname> <ref linktype="simple" target="NonC:21-2" show="replace" actuate="onrequest"> (In non correspondence)</ref> </indexentry> <indexentry> <namegrp> <corpname>Bacon and Lewis, Ltd.</corpname> <persname>Levering, Alexander M.</persname> <persname>Windom, Lucious</persname> </namegrp> <ref linktype="simple" target="Cres:18610408" show="replace" actuate="onrequest"> (1861 Apr. 8, AL S, to W.W., re: inquiry into what to do with unsold flour)</ref> </indexentry> . . . </index>

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ref
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.xlink.attributes,
   ( text | model.para.content.norefs | bibref | title | extref | archref )*
}
```

<refloc>

<refloc> (Reference Location) A linking element that provides the location of a reference <ref> that is a resource in an extended link.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.roled (@*role*)
Member of	model.extended.els
Contained by	EAD: daogrp linkgrp
May contain	EAD: abbr address blockquote chronlist corpname date emph expan extptr famname function genreform geogname lb list name note num occupation

origination persname ptr repository subject table unitdate unittitle

Note   While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink/.

Example
```
<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="collection">
 <did>[...]</did>
 <arrangement>
  <p>This collection is organized into two major sections. The
    Original Gift portion reflects the materials originally
    donated to the Society by Mr. Provenance, while the
    Additions portion contains records transferred following
    his death. As these two groups of documents have not
    been physically interfiled, materials on any given topic
    may appear in either or both sections, each of which is
    divided into four parallel series. <linkgrp>
   <refloc target="a9"/>
   <refloc target="s1"/>
   <refloc target="s7"/>
  </linkgrp>
 </p>
 <p id="a9">Personal Correspondence></p>
 <p id="a10">Financial Records</p>
 <p id="a11">Diaries</p>
 <p id="a12">Literary Manuscripts</p>
</arrangement>
<dsc type="combined">
 <head>Original Gift</head>
 <c01 id="s1">
  <did>
   <unittitle>Personal correspondence, </unittitle>
   <unitdate>1917-1965.</unitdate>
  </did>
 </c01> . . . </dsc>
<dsc type="combined">
 <head>Additions</head>
 <c01 id="s7">
  <did>
   <unittitle>Personal correspondence, </unittitle>
   <unitdate>1922-1945.</unitdate>
  </did>
 </c01> . . . </dsc>
</archdesc>
```

Content model
```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration
```
element refloc
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
```

```
att.roled.attributes,
( text | model.para.content.norefs )*
}
```

\<relatedmaterial\>

\<relatedmaterial\> (Related Material) Information about materials that are not physically or logically included in the material described in the finding aid but that may be of use to a reader because of an association to the described materials. Materials designated by this element are not related to the described material by provenance, accumulation, or use.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp relatedmaterial
May contain	EAD: address archref bibref blockquote chronlist extref head linkgrp list note p ref relatedmaterial subtitle table title
Note	Do not confuse \<relatedmaterial\> with the element \<separatedmaterial\>, which provides information about materials that have been separated or physically removed from the described materials but that are related to them by provenance. Also do not confuse with \<altformavail\>, which encodes information about copies of the described materials, such as microforms, photocopies, and reproductions in digital formats. Do not confuse with \<originalsloc\>, which encodes information regarding the existence and location of the originals when the unit being described consists of copies.In EAD Version 1.0 \<relatedmaterial\> was a subelement of Adjunct Descriptive data \<add\>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group \<descgrp\> element, which can group any of the \<did\>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components \<dsc\>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The \<descgrp\> element can be used to replace \<add\> when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002. The \<relatedmaterial\> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.5.3 and MARC field 544 with indicator 1.
Example	\<relatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\> \<head\>Related Correspondence\</head\> \<p\>Researchers should note that a significant amount of the correspondence between Franklin Wigglethorpe and Nellie Forbush is extant. In addition to the incoming letters in this collection from Mr. Wigglethorpe to Miss Forbush, the letters written to Mr. Wigglethorpe by Miss Forbush are available to researchers at the Mainline University Special Collections Library.\</p\> \<archref\> \<origination\> \<persname\>Wigglethorpe, Franklin.\</persname\> \</origination\> \<unittitle\>Franklin Wigglethorpe Papers, \<unitdate type="inclusive"\>1782-1809.\</unitdate\> \</unittitle\> \<unitid\>MSS 00143\</unitid\>

```
      </archref>
      <p>An online guide to the Wigglethorpe Papers is available.
      <extptr actuate="onrequest"
        entityref="mu-scl-00143" show="new"/>
      </p>
      </relatedmaterial>
```

Example   <separatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
```
      <p>Photographs and sound recordings have been transferred to the
        appropriate custodial divisions of the Library where they
        are identified as part of these papers. Among the sound
        recordings are the following broadcasts:</p>
      <list>[...]</list>
      </separatedmaterial>
      <separatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
      <p>Other papers of Earl Warren, which relate chiefly to his
        early years and public service in California, are held by
        the California State Archives in Sacramento.</p>
      </separatedmaterial>
      <relatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
      <p>Records relating to the Warren Commission are held in the
        National Archives and Records Administration.</p>
      </relatedmaterial>
```

Content model

```
      <content>
      </content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element relatedmaterial
```
      {
         att.EADGlobal.attributes,
         att.typed.attributes,
         head?,
         ( model.blocks | model.refs | relatedmaterial )+
      }
```

<repository>

<repository> (Repository) The institution or agency responsible for providing intellectual access to the materials being described. The <corpname> element may be used within <repository> to encode the institution's proper name.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.labeled (@*label*)
Member of	model.data model.did
Contained by	EAD: archref did entry event extrefloc item label p ref refloc
May contain	EAD: abbr address archref bibref corpname emph expan extptr extref lb linkgrp name ptr ref subarea subtitle title
Note	Although the repository providing intellectual access usually also has physical custody over the materials, this is not always the case. For example, an archives may assume responsibility for long-term intellectual access to electronic records, but the actual electronic data files or systems may continue to reside in the office where they were created and maintained, or they may be held for long-term

storage by a unit such as a data library that is able to provide the appropriate technical facilities for storage and remounting. When it is clear that the physical custodian does not provide intellectual access, use <physloc> to identify the custodian and <repository> to designate the intellectual caretaker. When a distinction cannot be made, assume that the custodian of the physical objects also provides intellectual access to them and should be recognized as the <repository>.The <repository> element is comparable to MARC field 852.

Example

```
<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="inventory" level="subgrp">
 <did>
  <head>Overview of the Records</head>
  <repository label="Repository:">
   <corpname>Minnesota Historical Society</corpname>
  </repository>
  <origination label="Creator:">Minnesota. Game and Fish
    Department</origination>
  <unittitle label="Title:">Game laws violation records, </unittitle>
  <unitdate label="Dates:">1908-1928</unitdate>
  <abstract label="Abstract:">Records of prosecutions for and
    seizures of property resulting from violation of the
    state's hunting and fishing laws. </abstract>
  <physdesc label="Quantity:">2.25 cu. ft. (7 v. and 1 folder
    in 3 boxes) </physdesc>
  <physloc label="Location:">See Detailed Description section
    for box location</physloc>
 </did>
</archdesc>
```

Example

Note: The Public Record Office of the United Kingdom uses a 7 level system of intellectual units devised specifically for that repository. In that system "lettercode" is the equivalent of "fonds" and "class" is the equivalent of "series."

```
<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="otherlevel"
 otherlevel="Lettercode">
 <did>
  <unitid>EW</unitid>
  <unittitle>Records of the Department of Economic
    Affairs</unittitle>
  <origination>
   <corpname>Department of Economic
     Affairs</corpname>
  </origination>
  <unitdate>1945-1979</unitdate>
  <physdesc>
   <extent>28 </extent>
   <genreform>classes</genreform>
  </physdesc>
  <repository>Public Record Office, Kew</repository>
 </did>
</archdesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema

Declaration	element repository
	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  att.labeled.attributes,
	  (text | model.phrase.basic | address | corpname | name | subarea)*
	}

<resource>

<resource> (Resource) A linking element that specifies the local resource that participates in an extended link.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*)
Member of	model.extended.els
Contained by	EAD: daogrp linkgrp
May contain	EAD: emph lb
Note	While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.
Example	

```
<c02 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="file">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Photographs of John Smith and family
    members</unittitle>
  <unitdate type="inclusive"
   normal="1895/1928">1895-1928</unitdate>
  <daogrp linktype="extended">
   <daodesc>
    <p>Sample digitized image from this file: John Smith
       graduation portrait, <date normal="18950528">28
         May 1895</date>.</p>
   </daodesc>
   <resource linktype="resource"
    label="start"/>
   <daoloc entityref="f0042_1tmb"
    linktype="locator" label="thumb"/>
   <daoloc entityref="f0042_1ref"
    linktype="locator" label="reference"/>
   <arc linktype="arc" show="embed"
    actuate="onload" from="start" to="thumb"/>
   <arc linktype="arc" show="new"
    actuate="onrequest" from="thumb" to="reference"/>
  </daogrp>
 </did>
</c02>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element resource
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.xlink.attributes,
  ( text | model.render )*
}
```

<revisiondesc>

<revisiondesc> (Revision Description) An optional subelement of the <eadheader> for information about changes or alterations that have been made to the encoded finding aid. The revisions may be recorded as part of a <list> or as a series of <change> elements. Like much of the <eadheader>, the <revisiondesc> element is modeled on an element found in the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) DTD. The TEI recommends that revisions be numbered and appear in reverse chronological order, with the most recent <change> first.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by   EAD: eadheader
May contain   EAD: change list
Example

```
<eadheader xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" audience="internal"
 langencoding="iso639-2b">
 <eadid>[...]</eadid>
 <filedesc>[...]</filedesc>
 <profiledesc>[...]</profiledesc>
 <revisiondesc>
  <change>
   <date normal="19970505">May 5, 1997</date>
   <item>This electronic finding aid was updated to current
       markup standards by Sarah Taylor using a perl
       script. Updates included: eadheader, eadid,
       arrangement of did elements and their labels.</item>
  </change>
 </revisiondesc>
</eadheader>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration   element revisiondesc { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (list | change+) }

<row>

<row> (Table Row) A formatting element that contains one or more <entry> elements (horizontal cells) in a table.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)

rowsep	**Status**	Optional
	Datatype	
	Legal values are:	1

0

	valign	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**top**
			middle
			bottom

Contained by	EAD: tbody thead
May contain	EAD: entry
Note	By convention, a rule specified by the ROWSEP attribute prints or displays below the row. Vertical rules are specified by the COLSEP attribute in <table> or one of its column-related subelements; external rules are specified by the FRAME attribute available on the <table> element.See also related elements <table>, <tbody>, <tgroup>, and <thead>.

Example	`<table xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" frame="none">`
	`<tgroup cols="3">`
	`<colspec colnum="1" colname="1"`
	`align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>`
	`<colspec colnum="2" colname="2"`
	`align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>`
	`<colspec colnum="3" colname="3"`
	`align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>`
	`<thead>`
	`<row>`
	`<entry colname="1">Major Family Members</entry>`
	`<entry colname="2">Spouses</entry>`
	`<entry colname="3">Children</entry>`
	`</row>`
	`</thead>`
	`<tbody>`
	`<row>`
	`<entry colname="1">John Albemarle`
	`(1760-1806)</entry>`
	`<entry colname="2">Mary Frances Delaney`
	`(1769-1835)</entry>`
	`<entry colname="3">John Delaney Albemarle`
	`(1787-1848)</entry>`
	`</row> . . . </tbody>`
	`</tgroup>`
	`</table>`

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element row
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   attribute rowsep { "1" | "0" }?,
```

```
        attribute valign { "top" | "middle" | "bottom" }?,
        entry+
}
```

<runner>

<runner> (Runner) An optional formatting element that provides for a header, footer, or watermark to appear on every page of a printed finding aid or throughout an electronic version. If a transparent image is desired as background, use <extptr/> instead. The <runner> is available within <archdesc> and <archdescgrp> and must appear before the <did>. The PLACEMENT attribute specifies whether the <runner> should appear as a header, footer, or watermark.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.roled (*@role*) placement
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Example	<runner xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" placement="footer"> Special Collections, University of Virginia Library, #5866-b </runner>
Content model	

```
            <content>
            </content>
```

Schema Declaration	element runner

```
{
    att.EADGlobal.attributes,
    att.roled.attributes,
    attribute placement { "header" | "footer" | "watermark" }?,
    ( text | model.phrase.bare )*
}
```

<scopecontent>

<scopecontent> (Scope and Content) A prose statement summarizing the range and topical coverage of the described materials, often mentioning the form and arrangement of the materials and naming significant organizations, individuals, events, places, and subjects represented. The purpose of the <scopecontent> element is to assist readers in evaluating the potential relevance of the materials to their research. It may highlight particular strengths of, or gaps in, the described materials and may summarize in narrative form some of the descriptive information entered in other parts of the finding aid.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp scopecontent
May contain	EAD: address arrangement blockquote chronlist dao daogrp head list note p scopecontent table
Note	Additional <scopecontent> elements may be nested inside one another when a complex collection of materials is being described and separate headings are desired. For example, when a collection is received and processed in installments, individual scope and content notes may be created for each installment. EAD permits these separate narrative descriptions to be encoded as

discrete <scopecontent> elements, but it also enables the encoder to gather the independent <scopecontent> notes within a single larger <scopecontent> reflective of the materials as a whole. Nested <scopecontent> elements might also occur when an institution encodes the first paragraph of a long scope and content note as a separate summary <scopecontent> with an *encodinganalog* attribute set to MARC field 520$a.The *scopecontent* element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.3.1 and MARC field 520.

Example
```
<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="fonds">
 <did>[...]</did>
 <scopecontent encodinganalog="520">
  <head>Scope and Content</head>
  <p>Fonds includes records relating to the Department of
     Plant Ecology's administration, teaching and research;
     extension work relating to the Saskatchewan Weed Survey;
     and correspondence with a variety of institutions and
     individuals. A series of minutes and correspondence
     relating to the Saskatchewan Committee on the Ecology
     and Preservation of Grasslands (established in 1935)
     documents the efforts to establish permanent reserves of
     significant grasslands in Saskatchewan.</p>
 </scopecontent>
</archdesc>
```

Example
```
<dsc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="combined">
 <head>Detailed Description of the Collection</head>
 <c01 level="series">
  <did>
   <unittitle>Record of Prosecutions, </unittitle>
   <unitdate>1916-1927. </unitdate>
   <physdesc>3 volumes.</physdesc>
  </did>
  <scopecontent>
   <p>Information provided in each entry: date of report,
      name and address of person arrested, location where
      offense was committed, date of arrest, nature of
      offense, name of judge or justice, result of trial,
      amounts of fine and court costs, number of days
      served if jailed, name of warden, and occasional
      added remarks. Types of offenses included hunting or
      fishing out of season or in unauthorized places,
      exceeding catch or bag limits, taking undersized
      fish, illegal fishing practices such as gill-netting
      or dynamiting, illegal hunting practices such as
      night-lighting, killing non-game birds, fishing or
      hunting without a license, and hunting-related
      offenses against persons such as fraud and
      assault.</p>
  </scopecontent>
 </c01>
</dsc>
```

Example
```
<scopecontent xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <p>Papers of the Lewis family, 19th-20th cent., mainly letters
    to: Elizabeth, Lady Lewis (1844-1931), with a few to her
```

husband Sir George Lewis, 1st Bart. (1833-1911); to one of their daughters, Katherine Elizabeth Lewis (d. 1961), with a few to their son Sir George Lewis, 2nd Bart. (1868-1927); and to their grand-daughter Elizabeth Lewis, later Wansbrough (d. 1995). Many of the letters are undated; some can be dated from the postmark on the envelope, but several letters were kept in the wrong envelopes; most of Paderewski's and Whistler's letters had become separated from their envelopes.</p>
</scopecontent>

Content model

<content>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element scopecontent
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   head?,
   ((model.blocks) | arrangement | scopecontent | dao | daogrp)+
}

<separatedmaterial>

<separatedmaterial> (Separated Material) Information about materials that are associated by provenance to the described materials but that have been physically separated or removed.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@*id, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp separatedmaterial
May contain	EAD: address archref bibref blockquote chronlist extref head linkgrp list note p ref separatedmaterial subtitle table title
Note	Items may be separated for various reasons, including the dispersal of special formats to more appropriate custodial units; the outright destruction of duplicate or nonessential material; and the deliberate or unintentional scattering of fonds among different repositories. Do not confuse with <relatedmaterial>, which is used to encode descriptions of or references to materials that are not physically or logically included in the material described in the finding aid but that may be of use to a reader because of an association to the described materials. Items encoded as <relatedmaterial> are not related to the described material by provenance, accumulation, or use.In EAD Version 1.0 <separatedmaterial> was a subelement of Adjunct Descriptive Data <add>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp> element can be used to replace <add> when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002. The <separatedmaterial> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.5.3 and MARC field 544 with indicator 0.
Example	<separatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">

<head>Materials Cataloged Separately</head>
<p>Photographs have been transferred to Pictorial Collections of
   The Bancroft Library.</p>
</separatedmaterial>

Example <separatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
<p>Photographs and sound recordings have been transferred to the
   appropriate custodial divisions of the Library where they
   are identified as part of these papers. Among the sound
   recordings are the following broadcasts:</p>
<list>[...]</list>
</separatedmaterial>
<separatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
<p>Other papers of Earl Warren, which relate chiefly to his
   early years and public service in California, are held by
   the California State Archives in Sacramento.</p>
</separatedmaterial>
<relatedmaterial xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
<p>Records relating to the Warren Commission are held in the
   National Archives and Records Administration.</p>
</relatedmaterial>

Content model

<content>
</content>

**Schema
Declaration** element separatedmaterial
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   head?,
   (model.blocks | model.refs | separatedmaterial)+
}

\<seriesstmt>

\<seriesstmt> (Series Statement) A wrapper element within the \<filedesc> portion of \<eadheader>
that groups information about the published monographic series, if any, to which an encoded
finding aid belongs. The \<seriesstmt> may contain just text, laid out in Paragraphs \<p>, or it may
include the \<titleproper> and \<num> elements, which allow for more specific tagging of names or
numbers associated with the series.

Module   EAD
Attributes   att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by EAD: filedesc
May contain   EAD: num p titleproper
Example   <filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
<titlestmt>
<titleproper>Inventory of the Alfred Harrison Joy Papers,
<date>1910-1972</date>
</titleproper>
<author>Processed by Ronald S. Brashear; machine-readable
   finding aid created by Xiuzhi Zhou</author>
</titlestmt>

```
            <publicationstmt>

<!--&amp;hdr-huntm;-->
 <date>© 1998</date>
 <p>The Huntington Library. All rights reserved.</p>
</publicationstmt>
<seriesstmt>
 <p>Observatories of the Carnegie Institution of Washington
    Collection</p>
</seriesstmt>
</filedesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration   element seriesstmt { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (titleproper | num | p)+ }

\<sponsor\>

\<sponsor\> (Sponsor) Name(s) of institution(s) or individual(s) who endorsed, financed, or arranged the acquisition, appraisal, and processing of the described materials or the preparation and distribution of the finding aid. Because acknowledgment of such contributors often appears on title pages of finding aids, the \<sponsor\> element is available in both the optional \<titlepage\> element in \<frontmatter\> and in the required \<titlestmt\> portion of the \<eadheader\>. Do not confuse with \<author\>, which is used to denote the persons or institutions responsible for the intellectual content of the finding aid, or with \<repository\>, which is used to identify the institution or corporate body providing intellectual access to the described materials.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: titlepage titlestmt
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	The \<sponsor\> element is comparable to MARC field 536.
Example	\<filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"\>

```
 <titlestmt>
  <titleproper>Inventory of The Bruno Walter Papers, <date>ca.
     1887-1966</date>
  </titleproper>
  <author>Processed by Richard Koprowski, Fran Barulich, and
     Robert Kosovsky; machine-readable finding aid created by
     Robert Kosovsky</author>
  <sponsor>Encoding funded by the generous support of the
     Gladys Krieble Delmas Foundation.</sponsor>
 </titlestmt> . . . </filedesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration   element sponsor { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.phrase.bare)* }

<subarea>

<subarea> (Subordinate Area) A name or phrase that indicates a secondary or subsidiary administrative level within a repository or other corporate body; a specialized area of subject or other collecting emphasis within a larger unit; or an ancillary collecting area based on the physical form of the materials.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: corpname repository
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	This information may be included as plain text within the <repository> and <corpname> elements, or it may be encoded within <repository> and <corpname> as separately tagged <subarea> elements. The latter approach facilitates the filtering of finding aids by administrative division, department, or specialty. For <corpname>s other than <repository>, the <subarea> might help refine searches of large corporate entities, such as government agencies, which share common words, e.g., United States.
Example	<did xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <repository> <corpname>Library of Congress, <subarea>Manuscript Division</subarea> </corpname> </repository> </did>
Example	<controlaccess xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <head>Index Terms</head> <corpname>National Association for the Advancement of Colored People <subarea>Washington Bureau</subarea> </corpname> </controlaccess>
Content model	<content> </content>
Schema Declaration	element subarea { att.EADGlobal.attributes, (text | model.phrase.bare)* }

<subject>

<subject> (Subject) A term that identifies a topic associated with or covered by the described materials. Personal, corporate, and geographic names behaving as subjects are tagged as <persname>, <corpname>, and <geogname>, respectively. The ROLE attribute can be set to "subject" when it is necessary to specify the relationship of the name to the materials being described.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.access (*@source*, *@rules*, *@authfilenumber*, *@normal*)
Member of	model.access
Contained by	EAD: controlaccess entry event extrefloc indexentry item label namegrp p physdesc physfacet ref refloc unittitle
May contain	EAD: emph extptr lb ptr
Note	All subjects mentioned in a finding aid do not have to be tagged. One option is to

tag those subjects for which access other than basic, undifferentiated keyword retrieval is desired. Use of controlled vocabulary forms is recommended to facilitate access to the subjects within and across finding aid systems. The <subject> element may be used in text elements such as <p>. To indicate a subject with major representation in the materials being described, nest <subject> within the <controlaccess> element.Use the SOURCE attribute to specify the vocabulary from which the term has been taken. The NORMAL attribute can be used to provide the authority form of a term that has been encoded with <subject> in narrative text, e.g., within a paragraph. The RULES attribute can be used to specify the descriptive rules followed when formulating the term. The AUTHFILENUMBER attribute can be used to identify a link to an authority file record that has more information about the subject or cross references for alternative forms of a subject term.

The <subject> element is comparable to MARC fields 650 and 69x.

Example	<controlaccess xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
	 <head>Selected Search Terms</head>
	 <controlaccess>
	  <head>Subjects:</head>
	  <subject encodinganalog="650">Alien and Sedition laws,
	    1798</subject>
	  <subject encodinganalog="650">American Confederate voluntary
	    exiles</subject>
	  <subject encodinganalog="650">Kentucky and Virginia
	    resolutions of 1798</subject>
	 </controlaccess>
	</controlaccess>

Content model	
	<content> </content>

Schema Declaration	element subject
	{
	   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	   att.access.attributes,
	   (text | model.phrase.bare)*
	}

<subtitle>

<subtitle> (Subitle) A secondary or subsidiary name of an encoded finding aid that is subordinate to the main name encoded in <titleproper>. The <subtitle> element is available only within <titlepage> and <titlestmt> to capture bibliographic aspects of the finding aid. Subtitles of monographs, serials, paintings, and other such works mentioned in the finding aid are not separately encoded, but they may be listed as part of the <title> element.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)
Member of	model.access.title model.refs
Contained by	EAD: abstract bibliography controlaccess creation descrules dimensions emph entry event indexentry item label langmaterial langusage materialspec namegrp origination otherfindaid p physdesc physfacet physloc relatedmaterial repository separatedmaterial titlepage titlestmt unitdate unitid unittitle

May contain EAD: abbr date emph expan extptr lb num ptr
Example <filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <titlestmt>
  <titleproper>Tom Stoppard</titleproper>
  <subtitle>An Inventory of His Papers at the Harry Ransom
    Humanities Research Center</subtitle>
  <author>Finding aid written by Katherine Mosley</author>
 </titlestmt>
 <publicationstmt>
  <publisher>The University of Texas at Austin, Harry Ransom
    Humanities Research Center</publisher>
  <date>2000</date>
 </publicationstmt>
</filedesc>

Content model

  <content>
  </content>

Schema
Declaration element subtitle
  {
    att.EADGlobal.attributes,
    (text | model.phrase.bare | abbr | date | expan | num)*
  }

<table>

<table> (Table) A wrapper element for formatting information in a row and column display.
Module EAD
Attributes att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)

frame	**Status**	Optional	
	Datatype		
	Legal values are:	**top**	
		bottom	
		topbot	
		all	
		sides	
		none	
colsep	**Status**	Optional	
	Datatype		
	Legal values are:	**1**	
		0	
rowsep	**Status**	Optional	
	Datatype		

		Legal values are:	1
			0
pgwide	**Status**	Optional	
	Datatype		
	Legal values are:	1	
		0	

Member of	model.inter.noquote
Contained by	EAD: accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist blockquote controlaccess custodhist daodesc descgrp div dsc dscgroup event extrefloc index item note odd originalsloc otherfindaid p phystech prefercite processinfo ref refloc relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict
May contain	EAD: head tgroup
Note	The application of the <table> element is based on the XML Exchange Table Model, an XML expression of the Exchange subset of the full CALS table model DTD. This model is promulgated by the Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards (OASIS) to promote interoperability among vendor products.

Example	```<table xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" frame="none">
	 <tgroup cols="3">
	  <colspec colnum="1" colname="1"
	  align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
	  <colspec colnum="2" colname="2"
	  align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
	  <colspec colnum="3" colname="3"
	  align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
	  <thead>
	  <row>
	   <entry colname="1">Major Family Members</entry>
	   <entry colname="2">Spouses</entry>
	   <entry colname="3">Children</entry>
	  </row>
	  </thead>
	  <tbody>
	  <row>
	   <entry colname="1">John Albemarle
	     (1760-1806)</entry>
	   <entry colname="2">Mary Frances Delaney
	     (1769-1835)</entry>
	   <entry colname="3">John Delaney Albemarle
	     (1787-1848)</entry>
	  </row> . . . </tbody>
	 </tgroup>
	</table>```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element table
                   {
                     att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                     attribute frame { "top" | "bottom" | "topbot" | "all" | "sides" | "none" }?,
                     attribute colsep { "1" | "0" }?,
                     attribute rowsep { "1" | "0" }?,
                     attribute pgwide { "1" | "0" }?,
                     head?,
                     tgroup+
                   }

<tbody>

<tbody> (Table Body) A formatting element that contains one or more <row> elements, which in turn contain <entry> elements in a <table>. The <tbody> element identifies the body of the information in a <table>, as distinct from the column headings (Table Head <thead>).

Module	EAD	
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)	
	valign	**Status** Optional
		Datatype
		Legal values are: top
		middle
		bottom

Contained by	EAD: tgroup
May contain	EAD: row
Note	See also related elements <entry>, <row>, <table>, <tgroup>, and <thead>.
Example	<table xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" frame="none">

```
<table xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" frame="none">
 <tgroup cols="3">
  <colspec colnum="1" colname="1"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <colspec colnum="2" colname="2"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <colspec colnum="3" colname="3"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <thead>
   <row>
    <entry colname="1">Major Family Members</entry>
    <entry colname="2">Spouses</entry>
    <entry colname="3">Children</entry>
   </row>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
   <row>
    <entry colname="1">John Albemarle
       (1760-1806)</entry>
    <entry colname="2">Mary Frances Delaney
       (1769-1835)</entry>
    <entry colname="3">John Delaney Albemarle
```

```
          (1787-1848)</entry>
        </row> . . . </tbody>
       </tgroup>
      </table>
```
Content model

```
      <content>
      </content>
```

Schema
Declaration   element tbody
```
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  attribute valign { "top" | "middle" | "bottom" }?,
  row+
}
```

<tgroup>

<tgroup> (Table Group) A formatting element that bundles <table> subelements: <colspec/>, <thead>, and <tbody>. Tables are comprised of one or more <tgroup>s, depending on the number of times the column specifications change. The <tgroup> element provides a subgrouping of rows within a table that all use the same column specifications.

Module	EAD		
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)		
	cols	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	colsep	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**1**
			0
	rowsep	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**1**
			0
	align	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**left**
			right
			center
			justify
			char

Contained by   EAD: table
May contain   EAD: colspec tbody thead

Note   Three attributes are used together to force horizontal alignment on a specific character, such as a decimal point. The ALIGN attribute must be set to "char" (align="char"). The CHAR attribute should be set to the specific character on which the text will align (for example the decimal point, char="."). The CHAROFF attribute controls the position of the alignment by naming the percentage of the current column width that is to the left of the alignment character (for example, charoff="30"). The required COLS attribute specifies the number of columns in the table.By convention, any rule specified in COLSEP is printed or displayed to the right of the column. External rules are specified with the FRAME attribute of <table>; horizontal rules are specified with the <table> or <tgroup> ROWSEP attribute.

By convention, any rule specified in rowsep prints or displays below the row. Vertical rules are specified by a COLSEP attribute; external rules are specified by the FRAME attribute of the <table> element.

See also related elements <colspec/>, <table>, <tbody>, <thead>.

Example

```
<odd xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <head>Appendix: Chronological List of the Names of Major Family
   Members, Their Spouses, and Children</head>
 <p>Papers of the individuals listed here make up the greater
   part of the Albemarle Family Papers. Names of children who
   are known not to have survived to adulthood are omitted.</p>
 <table frame="none">
  <tgroup cols="3">
  <colspec colnum="1" colname="1"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <colspec colnum="2" colname="2"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <colspec colnum="3" colname="3"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <thead>
   <row>
    <entry colname="1">Major Family Members</entry>
    <entry colname="2">Spouses</entry>
    <entry colname="3">Children</entry>
   </row>
  </thead>
  <tbody>
   <row>
    <entry colname="1">John Albemarle
        (1760-1806)</entry>
    <entry colname="2">Mary Frances Delaney
        (1769-1835)</entry>
    <entry colname="3">John Delaney Albemarle
        (1787-1848)</entry>
   </row>
   <row>
    <entry colname="3">Lucretia Albemarle Goodrich
        (1788-1823)</entry>
   </row>
   <row>
    <entry colname="3">Porter Breckinridge Albermarle
        (1790-1831)</entry>
```

```
    </row>
    <row>
     <entry colname="3">Joseph Fairfax Albemarle
        (1792-1856)</entry>
    </row>
    <row>
     <entry colname="1">John Delaney Albemarle
        (1787-1848)</entry>
     <entry colname="2">Martha Mary Adams
        (1795-1862)</entry>
     <entry colname="3">John Adams Albemarle
        (1814-1867)</entry>
    </row>
    <row>
     <entry colname="3">Mary Delaney Albemarle
        (1818-1880)</entry>
    </row> . . . </tbody>
   </tgroup>
  </table>
 </odd>
```

Content model
```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element tgroup
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  attribute cols { xsd:NMTOKEN }?,
  attribute colsep { "1" | "0" }?,
  attribute rowsep { "1" | "0" }?,
  attribute align { "left" | "right" | "center" | "justify" | "char" }?,
  colspec*,
  thead?,
  tbody
}
```

<thead>

<thead> (Table Head) A formatting element that contains the heading information in a <table>, usually column heads, that appears at the top of the table and may appear again at the top of any physical break in rows in the body. The <thead> element is used inside an ordinary structural <table> and to provide column headings for Components <c> or the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>.

Module	EAD		
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*)		
	valign	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**top**
			middle

bottom

Contained by	EAD: c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 dsc tgroup
May contain	EAD: row
Note	See related elements <table> and <tgroup> for general table information.
Example	<table xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" frame="none">

```
 <tgroup cols="3">
  <colspec colnum="1" colname="1"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <colspec colnum="2" colname="2"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <colspec colnum="3" colname="3"
   align="left" colwidth="50pt"/>
  <thead>
   <row>
    <entry colname="1">Major Family Members</entry>
    <entry colname="2">Spouses</entry>
    <entry colname="3">Children</entry>
   </row>
  </thead>
  <tbody>[. . .]</tbody>
 </tgroup>
</table>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

**Schema
Declaration**

```
element thead
{
   att.EADGlobal.attributes,
   attribute valign { "top" | "middle" | "bottom" }?,
   row+
}
```

<title>

<title> (Title) The formal name of a work, such as a monograph, serial, or painting, listed in a finding aid. Subtitles of such works are not separately encoded but may instead be listed as part of the <title> element.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*) att.access (*@source*, *@rules*, *@authfilenumber*, *@normal*) att.xlink (*@label*, *@href*, *@type*, *@title*, *@from*, *@to*, *@role*, *@actuate*, *@show*, *@arcrole*, *@xpointer*, *@entityref*, *@target*, *@parent*) att.rendered (*@render*)
Member of	model.access.title model.refs
Contained by	EAD: abstract archref bibliography bibref bibseries controlaccess creation descrules dimensions emph entry event extref indexentry item label langmaterial langusage materialspec namegrp origination otherfindaid p physdesc physfacet physloc ref relatedmaterial repository separatedmaterial unitdate unitid unittitle
May contain	EAD: date emph extptr lb num ptr
Note	Do not confuse with <titleproper>, which is used for the title of the encoded finding

aid. Also do not confuse with <unittitle>, which is used to encode the name of the described materials, such as the title of a collection, record group, fonds, series, file, or item. Do not confuse with the TITLE attribute which is found in several linking elements. The <title> element may be used inside of <unittitle>, and it is possible that a <unittitle> may contain no text other than that which is further specified by the <title> element. (See example below.)The RULES attribute can be used to specify the descriptive rules followed when forming the title, such as AACR2R. The ENTITYREF or HREF attributes may be used to name either the entity or pointer when linking to a machine-readable version of the cited <title>. The RENDER attribute permits specification of how the content of a particular <title> element should be displayed or printed, e.g., bold, italics, quoted, etc. The <title> element is comparable to MARC fields 130, 240, 245, 630, 730, and 740.

While XML Linking Language (XLink) Version 1.0, which is the basis for EAD linking elements, is a stable document, examples of EAD usage are hypothetical and have not been tested in real XLink-based applications. Those wishing to use XLink are encouraged to consult the specification available online at http://www.w3.org/TR/xlink.

Example
```
<c01 xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <did>
  <unittitle>Short stories, </unittitle>
  <unitdate>1946-1954</unitdate>
 </did>
 <c02>
  <did>
   <unittitle>
    <title render="italic">The Lottery</title>
   </unittitle>
  </did>
 </c02>
</c01>
```

Example
```
<bibref xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <title render="italic">Library of Congress Acquisitions:
   Manuscript Division, <date>1982,</date>
 </title> p. 29.
</bibref>
```

Content model
```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration
```
element title
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.access.attributes,
  att.xlink.attributes,
  att.rendered.attributes,
  ( text | model.phrase.bare | date | num )*
}
```

<titlepage>

<titlepage> (Title Page) A wrapper element within <frontmatter> that groups bibliographic information about an encoded finding aid, including its name, author, and other aspects of its creation and publication. It contains much of the same information found in the <filedesc> portion of the <eadheader>, such as the <titleproper>, <subtitle>, <author>, <sponsor>, <publisher>, and <date> of the finding aid. Although it is possible to generate an electronic or printed title page directly from the <eadheader>, use of the <titlepage> may be more accommodating of local preferences, including displays of photographic illustrations, institutional logos, or other graphic images.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: frontmatter
May contain	EAD: author bibseries date edition num publisher sponsor subtitle titleproper
Example	<frontmatter xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">

```
<titlepage>
<titleproper>Inventory of The Arequipa Sanatorium Records,
<date>1911-1958</date>
</titleproper>
<num type="Collection number:">BANC MSS 92/894 c</num>
<publisher>The Bancroft Library<lb/>University of
  California, Berkeley<lb/>Berkeley, California </publisher>
<list type="deflist">
 <defitem>
  <label>Processed by:</label>
  <item>Lynn Downey</item>
 </defitem>
 <defitem>
  <label>Completed by:</label>
  <item>Mary Morganti and Katherine Bryant</item>
 </defitem>
 <defitem>
  <label>Date Completed:</label>
  <item>
   <date>May 1994</date>
  </item>
 </defitem>
 <defitem>
  <label>Encoded by:</label>
  <item>Gabriela A. Montoya</item>
 </defitem>
</list>
<p>© 1996 The Regents of the University of California. All
  rights reserved.</p>
</titlepage>
</frontmatter>
```

Content model

```
<content>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration   element titlepage

```
{
  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
  (
    m.blocks
  | author
  | date
  | edition
  | num
  | publisher
  | bibseries
  | sponsor
  | titleproper
  | subtitle
  )+
}
```

<titleproper>

<titleproper> (Title Proper of the Finding Aid) The name of the finding aid or finding aid series.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*) att.rendered (*@render*)
Contained by	EAD: seriesstmt titlepage titlestmt
May contain	EAD: abbr date emph expan extptr lb num ptr
Note	The <titleproper> element is required within the <titlestmt> subelement of <filedesc>, part of the <eadheader>. It may also be optionally used in the <titlepage> subelement of <frontmatter>. To encode the name of a finding aid series, <titleproper> may be used in the optional <seriesstmt> subelement of <filedesc>.The <titlestmt> relates to the finding aid and should not be confused with Title <title>, used to encode the formal names of works such as monographs, serials, paintings, etc., listed in the finding aid, or with Title of the Unit <unittitle>, used to encode the name of the described materials.
Example	<filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <titlestmt> <titleproper> Inventory of the Kingsley Amis Papers, <date>1941-1995</date> </titleproper> <author>Processed by Sara S. Hodson; machine-readable finding aid created by Xiuzhi Zhou</author> </titlestmt> . . . </filedesc>
Example	<frontmatter xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9"> <titlepage> <titleproper> Inventory of The Arequipa Sanatorium Records, <date>1911-1958</date> </titleproper> <num type="Collection number:">BANC MSS 92/894 c</num> <publisher>The Bancroft Library<lb/>University of California, Berkeley<lb/>Berkeley, California </publisher> © 1996 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. </titlepage> </frontmatter>

Content model

        `<content>`
        `</content>`

Schema Declaration	element titleproper
	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  att.typed.attributes,
	  att.rendered.attributes,
	  (text | model.phrase.bare | abbr | date | expan | num)*
	}

`<titlestmt>`

`<titlestmt>` (Title Statement) A required wrapper element within the `<filedesc>` portion of `<eadheader>` that groups information about the name of an encoded finding aid and those responsible for its intellectual content. Like much of the `<eadheader>`, the `<titlestmt>` element is modeled on an element found in the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) DTD, and its subelements must adhere to the following prescribed sequence: a required `<titleproper>`, followed by an optional `<subtitle>`, optional `<author>`, and optional `<sponsor>`.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*)
Contained by	EAD: filedesc
May contain	EAD: author sponsor subtitle titleproper
Note	The `<titlestmt>` relates to the finding aid and should not be confused with Title `<title>`, used to encode the formal names of works such as monographs, serials, paintings, etc., listed in the finding aid. Also do not confuse with Title of the Unit `<unittitle>`, used to encode the name of the described materials.

Example	`<filedesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">`
	 `<titlestmt>`
	  `<titleproper>` Inventory of the Kingsley Amis Papers,
	  `<date>`1941-1995`</date>`
	  `</titleproper>`
	  `<author>`Processed by Sara S. Hodson; machine-readable
	    finding aid created by Xiuzhi Zhou`</author>`
	 `</titlestmt>` . . . `</filedesc>`

Content model

        `<content>`
        `</content>`

Schema Declaration	element titlestmt
	{
	  att.EADGlobal.attributes,
	  (titleproper+, subtitle?, author?, sponsor?),
	  text
	}

`<unitdate>`

`<unitdate>` (Date of the Unit) The creation year, month, or day of the described materials. The

<unitdate> may be in the form of text or numbers, and may consist of a single date or range of dates. As an important subelement of the Descriptive Identification <did>, the <unitdate> is used to tag only the creation and other relevant dates of the materials described in the encoded finding aid. Do not confuse it with the <date> element, which is used to tag all other dates.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.normalized (*@normal*) att.labeled (*@label*) att.calendar (*@calendar*) att.era (*@era*) att.certainty (*@certainty*)

	type	characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
		Derived from att.typed
		Status Optional
		Datatype
	datechar	Term characterizing the nature of dates, such as dates of creation, accumulation, or modification.
		Status Optional
		Datatype

Member of	model.data model.did
Contained by	EAD: archref did entry event extrefloc item label p ref refloc unittitle
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref emph expan extptr extref lb linkgrp ptr ref subtitle title
Note	A standard numeric form of the date (YYYYMMDD, etc.) can be specified with the NORMAL attribute to facilitate machine comparison of dates for search purposes. The TYPE attribute may be used to indicate whether the <unitdate> represents inclusive dates or bulk (predominant) dates. The CERTAINTY attribute may be applied to indicate if the date has been supplied or estimated by the archivist. The DATECHAR attribute can be used to supply a term characterizing the nature of the dates, such as creation or accumulation. The CALENDAR attribute, which has a default value of "gregorian," specifies the calendar from which the date stems. The value "ce" (common or Christian era) is the default for the ERA attribute.The <unitdate> may be nested within the <unittitle> or used independently of that element.
	This element is comparable to ISAD(G) element 3.1.3, and MARC fields 245 subfield f for inclusive dates, 245 subfield g for bulk dates, or 260 subfield c.

Example	<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="collection">
	  <did>
	   <head>Collection Summary</head>
	   <origination label="Creator">
	    <corpname encodinganalog="110">National Association for the Advancement of Colored
	      People</corpname>
	   </origination>
	   <unittitle label="Title"
	   encodinganalog="245">Visual
	    Materials from the National Association for the
	    Advancement of Colored People Records (Library of
	    Congress)</unittitle>
	   <unitdate label="Dates" type="inclusive"
	   encodinganalog="260"> ca. 1838-1969, </unitdate>
	   <unitdate type="bulk">bulk 1944-1955</unitdate>
	  </did>
	 </archdesc>

Example	<dsc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" type="analyticover">

```
      <c level="subseries">
       <did>
        <unittitle>Documentary Movies, </unittitle>
        <unitdate type="inclusive"
         normal="1952/1964">1952-1964</unitdate>
        <physdesc>
         <extent>2.5 linear ft.</extent>
        </physdesc>
        <abstract>Includes scores, arranged alphabetically by
           movie title, and some correspondence, arranged
           chronologically.</abstract>
       </did>
      </c> . . . </dsc>
```

Schematron   \<unitdates> COULD have a *label* attribute or an *encodinganalog* attribute, describing the type of date

     \<s:rule context="ead:unitdate"> \<s:assert role="COULD" test="normalize-space(@label) or normalize-space(@encodinganalog)">unitdates COULD have a label attribute or an encodinganalog attribute, describing the type of date</s:assert> </s:rule>

Schematron   \<unitdate> SHOULD have a non-empty *normal* attribute

     \<s:rule context="ead:unitdate"> \<s:assert role="SHOULD" test="normalize-space(@normal)">unitdate should have a non-empty @normal attribute</s:assert> </s:rule>

Schematron   The *normal* attribute of \<unitdate> must respect the ISO8601 pattern = YYYY-MM-DD

     \<s:rule context="ead:unitdate"> \<s:assert role="MUST" test="matches(@normal, '^(\d{4}-?\d{2}-?\d{2}/?){1,2}$')">date format MUST be valid. @normal attribute must respect ISO8601 pattern = YYYY-MM-DD</s:assert> \<s:let name="start-date" value="replace(@normal, '/.*', '')"/> \<s:let name="start-date" value="replace($start-date, '-', '')"/> \<s:let name="start-date" value="string-join((substring($start-date, 1, 4), substring($start-date, 5, 2), substring($start-date, 7, 2)), '-')"/> \<s:assert role="MUST" test="$start-date castable as xs:date">start date MUST exist</s:assert> \<s:let name="end-date" value="replace(@normal, '.*/', '')"/> \<s:let name="end-date" value="replace($end-date, '-', '')"/> \<s:let name="end-date" value="string-join((substring($end-date, 1, 4), substring($end-date, 5, 2), substring($end-date, 7, 2)), '-')"/> \<s:assert role="MUST" test="$end-date castable as xs:date">end date MUST exist</s:assert> </s:rule>

Content model

     \

Schema Declaration

```
      element unitdate
      {
        att.EADGlobal.attributes,
        att.normalized.attributes,
        att.labeled.attributes,
        att.calendar.attributes,
        att.era.attributes,
        att.certainty.attributes,
        attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
        attribute datechar { text }?,
```

```
( text | model.phrase.basic )*
}
```

\<unitid\>

\<unitid\> (ID of the Unit) Any alpha-numeric text string that serves as a unique reference point or control number for the described material, such as a lot number, an accession number, a classification number, or an entry number in a bibliograph y or catalog. An important subelement of the Descriptive Identification \<did\>, the \<unitid\> is primarily a logical designation, which sometimes secondarily provides location information, as in the case of a classification number. Use other \<did\> subelements, such as \<physloc\> and \<container\>, to designate specifically the physical location of the described materials.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*) att.labeled (*@label*) att.coded (*@countrycode*)

	repositorycode	A unique code indicating the repository responsible for intellectual control of the materials being described.
		Status Optional
		Datatype
		Note The code should be taken from ISO/DIS 15511 Information and documentation--International Standard Indentifier for Libraries and Related Oranizations (ISIL), as specified in the \<eadheader\> *repositoryencoding* attribute.
	identifier	A machine-readable unique identifier.
		Status Optional
		Datatype

Member of	model.did
Contained by	EAD: archref did
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref emph expan extptr extref lb linkgrp ptr ref subtitle title
Note	Do not confuse \<unitid\>, which relates to the archival materials, with \<eadid\>, which is used to designate a unique identification string for the finding aid.Although not required, the COUNTRYCODE and REPOSITORYCODE attributes should be used in \<unitid\> at the \<archdesc\>\<did\> level to comply with ISAD(G) element 3.1.1. REPOSITORYCODE specifies the ISO 15511 code for the institution that has custody of the materials described, while COUNTRYCODE provides the ISO 3166-1 code for the country in which that institution is located. IDENTIFIER should contain a machine-readable unique identifier, containing a value similar to the text in the \<unitid\> element. The TYPE attribute may be used to indicate the system from which the \<unitid\> was derived, e.g., accessioning system, record group classification scheme, records retention scheduling system, etc.
Example	\<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="collection"\> \<did\> \<head\>Descriptive Summary\</head\> \<unittitle label="Title"\>Donald C. Stone, Jr. Papers, \</unittitle\> \<unitdate type="inclusive"\>1971-1983\</unitdate\> \<unitid countrycode="us" repositorycode="cbgtu" label="Accession number"\> GTU 2001-8-03\</unitid\> \<origination label="Creator"\> \<persname source="lcnaf"\> Stone, Donald C., Jr. \</persname\>

```
                    </origination>
                    <physdesc label="Extent">
                     <extent>4 boxes, </extent>
                     <extent>4
                        linear ft.</extent>
                    </physdesc>
                    <repository label="Repository"> The <corpname>Graduate
                        Theological Union</corpname>
                     <address>
                      <addressline>Berkeley,
                         California</addressline>
                     </address>
                    </repository>
                    <abstract label="Abstract">The papers document Donald C.
                       Stone's work with Ornstein and Swencionis on the <emph render="italic">est</
emph> Outcome Project, and the
                       development of his doctoral research, including his
                       various publications on the human potential movement, up
                       to the completion of his doctoral
                       dissertation.</abstract>
                     <physloc label="Shelf location">5/D/4-5</physloc>
                    </did> . . . </archdesc>
```

Schematron	Each unit of description SHOULD have an indentifier in the element \<unitid\>. \<s:rule context="ead:unitid"\> \<s:assert role="SHOULD" test="normalize-space(.)"\>a unitid SHOULD not be empty\</s:assert\> \</s:rule\>
Schematron	In a given EAD document, all the \<unitid\> elements MUST be unique \<s:rule context="ead:unitid"\> \<s:assert role="MUST" test="count(//ead:unitid[@label = 'ehri_main_identifier']) = count(distinct-values(//unitid[@label = 'ehri_main_identifier']))"\>unitid's MUST be unique within one ead file\</s:assert\> \</s:rule\>
Schematron	If the repositoryencoding is set to iso15511, the format of the value of the *repositorycode* attribute is constrained according to the International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL: ISO 15511): a prefix, a dash, and an identifier. \<s:rule context="*[@repositorycode] [preceding::ead:eadHeader/@repositoryencoding = 'iso15511']"\> \<s:let name="iso15511Pattern" value="'(^([A-Z]{2})|([a-zA-Z]{1})|([a-zA-Z]{3,4}))(-[a-zA-Z0-9:/\-]{1,11})$'"/\> \<s:assert test="matches(@repositorycode, $iso15511Pattern)" role="SHOULD"\>If the repositoryencoding is set to iso15511, the format of the value of the \<s:emph\>repositorycode\</s:emph\> attribute of \<s:name/\> is constrained according to the International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL: ISO 15511): a prefix, a dash, and an identifier.\</s:assert\> \</s:rule\>

Content model

```
                    <content/>
```

**Schema
Declaration**

```
                    element unitid
                    {
                       att.EADGlobal.attributes,
                       att.typed.attributes,
                       att.labeled.attributes,
```

```
        att.coded.attributes,
        attribute repositorycode
        {
          token
          {
            pattern = "((AF|AX|AL|DZ|AS|AD|AO|AI|AQ|AG|AR|AM|AW|AU|AT|AZ|BS|
BH|BD|BB|BY|BE|BZ|BJ|BM|BT|BO|BA|BW|BV|BR|IO|BN|BG|BF|BI|KH|CM| CA|
CV|KY|CF|TD|CL|CN|CX|CC|CO|KM|CG|CD|CK|CR|CI|HR|CU|CY|CZ|DK|DJ|DM|
DO|EC|EG|SV|GQ|ER|EE|ET|FK|FO|FJ|FI|FR|GF|PF|TF|GA|GM|GE |DE|GH|GI|
GR|GL|GD|GP|GU|GT|GN|GW|GY|HT|HM|VA|HN|HK|HU|IS|IN|ID|IR|IQ|IE|IL|IT|
JM|JP|JO|KZ|KE|KI|KP|KR|KW|KG|LA|LV|LB|LS|LR|LY |LI|LT|LU|MO|MK|MG|
MW|MY|MV|ML|MT|MH|MQ|MR|MU|YT|MX|FM|MD|MC|MN|MS|MA|MZ|MM|NA|
NR|NP|NL|AN|NC|NZ|NI|NE|NG|NU|NF|MP|NO|OM|PK|PW| PS|PA|PG|PY|PE|
PH|PN|PL|PT|PR|QA|RE|RO|RU|RW|SH|KN|LC|PM|VC|WS|SM|ST|SA|SN|CS|
SC|SL|SG|SK|SI|SB|SO|ZA|GS|ES|LK|SD|SR|SJ|SZ|SE|CH |SY|TW|TJ|TZ|TH|TL|
TG|TK|TO|TT|TN|TR|TM|TC|TV|UG|UA|AE|GB|US|UM|UY|UZ|VU|VE|VN|VG|VI|
WF|EH|YE|ZM|ZW)| ([a-zA-Z]{1})|([a-zA-Z]{3,4}))(-[a-zA-Z0-9:/\-]{1,11})"
          }
        }?,
        attribute identifier { ( text | model.phrase.bare )* }?,
        ( text | model.phrase.basic )*
      }
```

<unittitle>

<unittitle> (Title of the Unit) The name, either formal or supplied, of the described materials. May consist of a word, phrase, character, or group of characters. As an important subelement of the Descriptive Identification <did>, the <unittitle> encodes the name of the described materials at both the highest unit or <archdesc> level (e.g., collection, record group, or fonds) and at all the subordinate Component <c> levels (e.g., subseries, files, items, or other intervening stages within a hierarchical description).

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (*@id*, *@altrender*, *@audience*, *@encodinganalog*) att.typed (*@type*) att.labeled (*@label*)
Member of	model.data model.did
Contained by	EAD: archref did entry event extrefloc item label p ref refloc
May contain	EAD: abbr archref bibref bibseries corpname date edition emph expan extptr extref famname function genreform geogname imprint lb linkgrp name num occupation persname ptr ref subject subtitle title unitdate
Note	Do not confuse <unittitle> with Title <title>, a more general element used to encode the formal names of works such as monographs, serials, paintings, etc. Also do not confuse with Title Proper of the Finding Aid <titleproper>, used to designate the name of a finding aid, or a finding aid series encoded in EAD.The <unittitle> element is comparable to ISAD(G) element 3.1.2 and MARC field 245.

Example	`<c xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" level="subseries">`
	`<did>`
	`<unittitle>Documentary Movies, </unittitle>`
	`<unitdate type="inclusive">1952-1964</unitdate>`
	`<physdesc>`
	`<extent>2.5 linear ft.</extent>`
	`</physdesc>`
	`<abstract label="Summary:">Includes scores, arranged`

alphabetically by movie title, and some correspondence,
arranged chronologically.
    </did>
    </c>

Content model

    <content>
    </content>

Schema
Declaration   element unittitle
    {
      att.EADGlobal.attributes,
      att.typed.attributes,
      att.labeled.attributes,
      (
        text
     | model.phrase.basic
     | model.access
     | unitdate
     | num
     | date
     | bibseries
     | edition
     | imprint
)*
    }

<userestrict>

<userestrict> (Conditions Governing Use) Information about conditions that affect use of the described materials after access has been granted.

Module	EAD
Attributes	att.EADGlobal (@*id*, @*altrender*, @*audience*, @*encodinganalog*) att.typed (@*type*)
Member of	model.desc.base
Contained by	EAD: archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 descgrp userestrict
May contain	EAD: address blockquote chronlist head list note p table userestrict
Note	May indicate limitations, regulations, or special procedures imposed by a repository, donor, legal statute, or other agency regarding reproduction, publication, or quotation of the described materials. May also indicate the absence of restrictions, such as when copyright or literary rights have been dedicated to the public. Do not confuse with Conditions Governing Access <accessrestrict>, which designates information about conditions affecting the availability of the described materials. Preferred Citation <prefercite> may be used in conjunction with <userestrict> to encode statements specifying how the described materials should be referenced when reproduced, published, or quoted by patrons.In EAD Version 1.0 <userestrict> was a subelement of Administrative Information <admininfo>, which has been deprecated in EAD 2002 (see Appendix B). The new Description Group <descgrp> element, which can group any of the <did>-level elements (except the Description of Subordinate Components <dsc>), may be used to wrap elements where a group heading is desirable. The <descgrp>

element can be used to replace <admininfo> where it has been used as a wrapper when converting finding aids encoded in EAD V1.0 to EAD 2002. The <userestrict> element is comparable to ISAD(G) data element 3.4.2 and MARC field 540.

Example   <userestrict xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
   <p>Until 2015 permission to photocopy some materials from this
    collection has been limited at the request of the donor.
    Please ask repository staff for details if you are
    interested in obtaining photocopies from Series 1:
    Correspondence.</p>
   </userestrict>

Example   <userestrict xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
   <p>Copyright to the collection has been transferred to the
    Regents of the University of Michigan.</p>
   </userestrict>

Content model
   <content>
   </content>

Schema Declaration   element userestrict
   {
    att.EADGlobal.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    head?,
    (model.blocks | userestrict)+
   }

Model classes

model.access

model.access	
Module	EAD
Used by	model.access.title model.data physdesc physfacet unittitle
Members	*corpname famname function genreform geoname name occupation persname subject*

model.access.title

model.access.title	
Module	EAD
Used by	controlaccess indexentry namegrp
Members	*model.access[corpname famname function genreform geoname name occupation persname subject] subtitle title*

model.blocks

model.blocks	
Module	EAD
Used by	accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist controlaccess custodhist daodesc descgrp div dsc dscgroup index note

odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict

Members *model.inter[model.inter.noquote[address chronlist list note table] blockquote] p*

model.data

model.data
Module EAD
Used by model.para.content.norefs model.phrase.plus
Members *model.access[corpname famname function genreform geogname name occupation persname subject] date num origination repository unitdate unittitle*

model.desc.base

model.desc.base Basic descriptive elements for the <did> element
Module EAD
Used by descgrp model.desc.full
Members *accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist controlaccess custodhist descgrp fileplan odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict*

model.desc.full

model.desc.full Complete set of Descriptive elements for the <did> element
Module EAD
Used by archdesc archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12
Members *model.desc.base[accessrestrict accruals acqinfo altformavail appraisal arrangement bibliography bioghist controlaccess custodhist descgrp fileplan odd originalsloc otherfindaid phystech prefercite processinfo relatedmaterial scopecontent separatedmaterial userestrict] dao daogrp dsc note*

model.did

model.did
Module EAD
Used by archref did
Members *abstract container dao daogrp langmaterial materialspec note origination physdesc physloc repository unitdate unitid unittitle*

model.extended.els

model.extended.els
Module EAD
Used by daogrp linkgrp
Members *arc extptrloc extrefloc ptrloc refloc resource*

model.inter

model.inter
Module EAD
Used by model.blocks model.para.content model.para.content.norefs
Members *model.inter.noquote[address chronlist list note table] blockquote*

model.inter.noquote

model.inter.noquote

Module	EAD
Used by	blockquote model.inter
Members	*address chronlist list note table*

model.para.content

model.para.content

Module	EAD
Used by	event item p
Members	*model.inter[model.inter.noquote[address chronlist list note table] blockquote] model.phrase.plus[model.data[model.access[corpname famname function genreform geogname name occupation persname subject] date num origination repository unitdate unittitle] model.phrase.basic.norefs[model.phrase.bare[model.render[emph lb] extptr ptr] abbr expan] model.refs[archref bibref extref linkgrp ref subtitle title]]*

model.para.content.norefs

model.para.content.norefs

Module	EAD
Used by	extrefloc ref refloc
Members	*model.data[model.access[corpname famname function genreform geogname name occupation persname subject] date num origination repository unitdate unittitle] model.inter[model.inter.noquote[address chronlist list note table] blockquote] model.phrase.basic.norefs[model.phrase.bare[model.render[emph lb] extptr ptr] abbr expan]*

model.phrase.bare

model.phrase.bare

Module	EAD
Used by	addressline author bibseries container corpname date edition famname function genreform geogname head head01 head02 imprint language legalstatus model.phrase.basic.norefs name num occupation persname publisher runner sponsor subarea subject subtitle title titleproper
Members	*model.render[emph lb] extptr ptr*

model.phrase.basic

model.phrase.basic

Module	EAD
Used by	abstract creation descrules dimensions emph langmaterial langusage materialspec origination physdesc physfacet physloc repository unitdate unitid unittitle
Members	*model.phrase.basic.norefs[model.phrase.bare[model.render[emph lb] extptr ptr] abbr expan] model.refs[archref bibref extref linkgrp ref subtitle title]*

model.phrase.basic.norefs

model.phrase.basic.norefs

Module	EAD
Used by	archref bibref model.para.content.norefs model.phrase.basic model.phrase.plus
Members	*model.phrase.bare[model.render[emph lb] extptr ptr] abbr expan*

model.phrase.plus

model.phrase.plus

Module	EAD
Used by	entry label model.para.content
Members	*model.data[model.access[corpname famname function genreform geogname name occupation persname subject] date num origination repository unitdate unittitle] model.phrase.basic.norefs[model.phrase.bare[model.render[emph lb] extptr ptr] abbr expan] model.refs[archref bibref extref linkgrp ref subtitle title]*

model.refs

model.refs

Module	EAD
Used by	bibliography model.phrase.basic model.phrase.plus otherfindaid relatedmaterial separatedmaterial
Members	*archref bibref extref linkgrp ref subtitle title*

model.render

model.render

Module	EAD
Used by	model.phrase.bare resource
Members	*emph lb*

Attribute classes

att.EADGlobal

att.EADGlobal provides attributes common to all elements in the EAD encoding scheme.

Module	EAD
Members	*abbr abstract accessrestrict accruals acqinfo address addressline altformavail appraisal archdesc archdescgrp archref arrangement author bibliography bibref bibseries bioghist blockquote c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12 change chronitem chronlist colspec container controlaccess corpname creation custodhist dao daodesc daogrp daoloc date defitem descgrp descrules did dimensions div dsc dscgroup ead eadheader eadid edition editionstmt emph entry event eventgrp expan extent extptr extptrloc extref extrefloc famname filedesc fileplan frontmatter function genreform geogname head head01 head02 imprint index indexentry item label langmaterial language langusage lb legalstatus linkgrp list listhead materialspec name namegrp note notestmt num occupation odd originalsloc origination otherfindaid p persname physdesc physfacet physloc phystech prefercite processinfo profiledesc ptr ptrgrp ptrloc publicationstmt publisher ref refloc relatedmaterial repository resource revisiondesc row runner scopecontent separatedmaterial seriesstmt sponsor subarea subject subtitle table tbody tgroup thead title titlepage titleproper titlestmt unitdate unitid unittitle userestrict*
Attributes	id Left span boundary

		Status	Optional
		Datatype	
altrender		Status	Optional
		Datatype	
audience		Status	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	internal
			external

encodinganalog A field or element in another descriptive encoding system to which an EAD element or attribute is comparable.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
<origination xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9">
 <corpname encodinganalog="MARC 110">Waters
   Studio</corpname>
</origination>
<archdesc xmlns="urn:isbn:1-931666-22-9" relatedencoding="
MARC">
 <origination>
  <persname encodinganalog="100$a$q$d$e"
   source="lcnaf"> Waters, E. C. (Elizabeth Cat),
     1870-1944, photographer </persname>
 </origination>
</archdesc>
```

Note Mapping elements from one system to another may help build a single user interface that can index comparable information in bibliographic records and finding aids. The mapping designations may also help a repository harvest selected data from a finding aid to build a basic catalog record. When possible, subfields as well as fields should be specified, e.g., subfields within MARC fields. If the *relatedencoding* attribute in <ead> , <eadheader>, or <archdesc> is not used to identify the encoding system from which fields are specified in the *encodinganalog* attribute, then include the system designation in *encodinganalog*.

att.access

att.access			
Module	EAD		
Members	*corpname famname function genreform geogname name occupation persname subject title*		
Attributes	source	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	rules	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
	authfilenumber	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	

	normal	A consistent form, usually from a controlled vocabulary list to facilitate retrieval
		Status Optional
		Datatype
		Note In <date> and <unitdate>, the NORMAL attribute follows ISO 8601 Representation of Dates and Times, as specified in the DATEENCODING attribute in <eadheader>.

att.calendar

att.calendar			
Module	EAD		
Members	*date unitdate*		
Attributes	calendar	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Default	gregorian

att.certainty

att.certainty			
Module	EAD		
Members	*date unitdate*		
Attributes	certainty	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	

att.coded

att.coded Groups together various attribute used to provide additional codes on elements

Module	EAD		
Members	*eadid unitid*		
Attributes	countrycode	A unique code for the country in which the materials being described are held.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	
		Schematron	The *countrycode* attribute SHOULD contain a code from the ISO 3166-1 codelist. This list is maintained in TEI by the Parthenos project under the link <s:rule context="*[exists(@countrycode)]"> <s:let name="countrycodes" value="document('https://raw.githubusercontent.com/ParthenosWP4/standardsLibrary/master/ISO/ISO3166/ISO3166_TEI.xml')"/> <s:let name="code" value="normalize-space(@countrycode)"/> <s:assert test="$countrycodes//tei:f[@name='a2code']/tei:symbol/@value = $code " role="COULD"> The countrycode attribute should contain a code from the ISO 3166-1 codelist.</s:assert> </s:rule>
		Note	Codes are to be taken from ISO 3166-1

Codes for the Representation of Names of Countries, column A2.

att.desc.c

att.desc.c		
Module	EAD	
Members	*archdescgrp c c01 c02 c03 c04 c05 c06 c07 c08 c09 c10 c11 c12*	
Attributes	level	The hierarchical level of the materials being described by the element.
		Status Optional
		Datatype
		Schematron If the attribute *level* has the value 'otherlevel', an attribute *otherlevel* MUST be added <s:rule context="ead:ead"> <s:assert role="MUST" test="not(@level = 'otherlevel') or (@otherlevel and not(@otherlevel = ''))">If the attribute level has the value 'otherlevel', an attribute otherlevel MUST be added</s:assert> </s:rule>
		Schematron The <archdesc> element can have for *level* the value 'fonds', not the subcomponents, <c01> to <c06> <s:rule context="ead:ead"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="not(@level = 'fonds') or name(.) = 'archdesc'">The archdesc can have for level the value 'fonds', not the subcomponents.</s:assert> </s:rule>
		Schematron A component with *level*="recordgrp" SHOULD be a child of another component with *level*="recordgrp" <s:rule context="ead:ead"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="not(@level = 'recordgrp') or (parent::*[@level = 'recordgrp'] or (name(.) = 'archdesc') or (name(.) = 'c01') and ancestor::*[@level = 'recordgrp'])">recordgrp SHOULD be a child of another recordgrp</s:assert> </s:rule>
		Schematron A component with *level*="subgrp" SHOULD be a child of another component with *level*="subgrp" or "recordgrp" <s:rule context="ead:ead"> <s:assert role="SHOULD" test="not(@level = 'subgrp') or ((parent::*[@level = 'recordgrp' or @level = 'subgrp']) or (name(.) = 'c01') and ancestor::*[@level = 'recordgrp'])">subgrp SHOULD be a child of another subgrp or a recordgrp</s:assert> </s:rule>
		Schematron A component with *level*="subseries" SHOULD be a child of another component with *level*="subseries" or "series" <s:rule context="ead:ead">

<s:assert role="SHOULD" test="not(@level = 'subseries') or parent::*[@level = 'subseries' or @level = 'series']">subseries SHOULD be a child of another subseries or a series</s:assert></s:rule>

Legal values are:	**class**	
	collection	
	fonds	
	item	
	otherlevel	
	recordgrp	
	series	
	subfonds	
	subgrp	
	subseries	
	file	
	Note	This attribute is available in <archdesc>>, where the highest level of material represented in the finding aid must be declared (e.g., collection, fonds, record group), and in c and c01-12 (e.g., subgroup, series, file). If none of the values in the semi-closed list are appropriate, the value "otherlevel" may be chosen and the term specified in the OTHERLEVEL attribute. Values are: collection fonds class recordgrp series subfonds subgrp subseries file item otherlevel
otherlevel	The hierarchical level of the materials described in <archdesc>, c, <c01-12>, and <archdescgrp> can be specified when the semi-closed list in the LEVEL attribute (e.g., collection, fonds, series, etc.) does not contain an appropriate term.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	
	Note	Set LEVEL to "otherlevel" and then supply the preferred term in the OTHERLEVEL attribute.

att.dsctab.tpattern

att.dsctab.tpattern
Module	EAD
Members	*dsc*

| **Attributes** | tpattern | **Status** | Optional |
| | | **Datatype** | |

att.encodings

att.encodings			
Module	EAD		
Members	*eadheader*		
Attributes	countryencoding	The authoritative source or rules for values supplied in the *countrycode* attribute in <eadid> and <unitid>.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	
		Default	iso3166-1
	langencoding	Language encoding for EAD instances subscribes to ISO 639-2b Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages, so the *langencoding* attribute value in <eadheader> should be "iso639-2b." The codes themselves are specified in the LANGCODE attribute in or <language>, as appropriate.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	
		Default	iso639-2b
	scriptencoding	The authoritative source or rules for values supplied in the *scriptcode* attribute in <language>.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	
		Default	iso15924
	repositoryencodi ng	The authoritative source or rules for values supplied in the *mainagencycode* attribute in <eadid> and the *repositorycode* attribute in <unitid>.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	
		Default	iso15511
	dateencoding	The authoritative source or rules for values provided in the *normal* attribute in <date> and <unitdate>.	
		Status	Optional
		Datatype	
		Default	iso8601

att.era

att.era			
Module	EAD		
Members	*date unitdate*		
Attributes	era	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	

att.labeled

att.labeled	
Module	EAD
Members	*abstract container dimensions extent langmaterial materialspec note origination physdesc physfacet physloc repository unitdate unitid unittitle*

| **Attributes** | label | A display label for an element can be supplied using this attribute when a meaningful label cannot be derived by the style sheet from the element name or when a heading element <head> is not available. |
| | | **Status**   Optional |

att.langcode

att.langcode

Module	EAD
Members	*abstract language*
Attributes	langcode	The three-lettter code for the language in which an abstract is written , for the language of the finding aid and the language of the materials <language>.

		Status Optional
		Datatype
		Schematron The *langcode* attribute SHOULD contain a code from the ISO 639 codelist. This list is maintained in TEI by the Parthenos project under the link <s:rule context="*[exists(@langcode)]"> <s:let name="langcodes" value="document('https://raw.githubusercontent. com/ParthenosWP4/standardsLibrary/master/IS O/ISO639/IANA2TEI/ISO639_TEI.xml')"/> <s:let name="code" value="normalize-space(@langcode)"/> <s:assert test="$langcodes//tei:f[@name='subTy pe']/tei:symbol/@value = $code " role="COULD">The langcode attribute SHOULD contain a code from the ISO 639 codelist.</s:assert> </s:rule>
		Note The codes should be taken from ISO639-2b, as specified in the LANGENCODING attribute in <eadheader>.

att.normalized

att.normalized Definition of the *normal* attribute

Module	EAD
Members	*date unitdate*
Attributes	normal	A consistent form, usually from a controlled vocabulary list to facilitate retrieval

		Status Optional
		Datatype
		Note In <date> and <unitdate>, the NORMAL attribute follows ISO 8601 Representation of Dates and Times, as specified in the DATEENCODING attribute in <eadheader>.

att.relatedencoding

att.relatedencoding

| **Module** | EAD |

Members	*archdesc archdescgrp ead eadheader*
Attributes	relatedencoding A descriptive encoding system, such as MARC, ISAD(G), or Dublin Core, to which certain EAD elements can be mapped using the <encodinganalog> attribute.

	Status	Optional
	Datatype	

att.rendered

att.rendered

Module	EAD
Members	*emph title titleproper*

Attributes	render	**Status**	Optional
		Datatype	
		Legal values are:	**altrender**
			bold
			bolddoublequote
			boldsinglequote
			boldsmcaps
			boldunderline
			doublequote
			italic
			nonproport
			singlequote
			smcaps
			sub
			super
			underline

att.roled

att.roled

Module	EAD
Members	*archref bibref corpname famname geogname name persname refloc runner*
Attributes	role	A contextual role or relationship for the person, family, corporate body, or geographic location. In linking elements such as <ptr/>, information that explains to application software the part that a remote resource plays in a link.

Status Optional

att.scriptcode

att.scriptcode

Module	EAD
Members	*language*
Attributes	scriptcode The four-letter code for the writing script used with a given language.

Optional

The *scriptcode* attribute SHOULD contain a code from the ISO 15924 codelist. This list is maintained in TEI by the Parthenos project under the link
`<s:rule context="*[exists(@scriptcode)]">`
`<s:let name="scriptcodes"`
`value="document('https://raw.githubusercontent.com/ParthenosWP4/standardsLibrary/master/ISO/ISO15924/ISO159242XML/ISO15924_TEI.xml')"/> <s:let name="code"`
`value="normalize-space(@scriptcode)"/>`
`<s:assert test="$scriptcodes//tei:f[@name='code']/tei:symbol/@value = $code "`
`role="COULD"> ` The script or scriptcode attribute SHOULD contain a code from the ISO 15924 codelist. `</s:assert> </s:rule>`
The code should be taken from ISO 15924 Code for the Representation of Names of Scripts.

att.typed

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way.

Module	EAD
Members	*abstract accessrestrict altformavail container date descgrp dimensions extent genreform legalstatus materialspec note num odd originalsloc physfacet physloc phystech processinfo relatedmaterial separatedmaterial title titleproper unitid unittitle userestrict*
Attributes	type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

      Status Optional
      Datatype

att.xlink

att.xlink Provides the definition of all XLink attributes needed for MLIF.NB : For the moment, all the linking attributes are in the same class (xlink attributes + XPOINTER + ENTITYREF + PARENT + TARGET)

Module	EAD
Members	*arc archref bibref dao daogrp daoloc extptr extptrloc extref extrefloc linkgrp ptr ref resource title*
Attributes	label Labels the resource of locater element.

	Status	Optional
	Datatype	
	Note	XLink traversal attribute
href	Supplies the data to find a remote resource.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	
	Note	Specifies a document (URI) and an XPointer
type	Indicates the XLink element type.	
	Status	Optional
	Legal values are:	**simple**
		Creates a simple link.
		extended
		Creates an extended link.
		locator
		Creates a locater link that points to a resource.
		arc
		Creates an arc with multiple resources and various traversal paths.
		resource
		Creates a resource link, which indicates a specific resource.
		title
		Creates a title link. Such elements are useful for internationalization purposes.
title	Allows a human-readable description.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	
from	Identifies the origin resource of an arc.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	
	Note	XLink transversal attribute
to	Identifies the destination resource of an arc.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	
	Note	XLink traversal attribute
role	Identifies the type of the related resource with an absolute URI.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	
actuate	A control that defines whether a link occurs automatically or must be requested by the user. It is used in conjunction with the SHOW attribute to determine link behavior.	
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	
	Legal values are:	**onLoad**
		onRequest
		other
		none
show	A control that defines whether a remote resource that is the target of a link	

appears at the point of the link, replaces the existing link, or appears in a new window. It is used in conjunction with the ACTUATE attribute to determine link behavior.

Status   Optional
Datatype
Legal values are: **new**

                         replace

                         embed

                         other

                         none

arcrole   URI preference that identifies a resource that describes some property of an arc-type or simple-type linking element.
          Status   Optional
          Datatype

xpointer The locator for a remote resource in a simple or locator link. The XPOINTER attribute takes the form of a Uniform Resource Identifier plus a reference, formulated in XPOINTER syntax, to a sub-resource of the remote resource. XPOINTER enables linking to specific sections of a document that are relative, i.e., based on their position in the document or their content, rather than by reference to a specific identifier such as an ID.
          Status   Optional
          Datatype

entityref The name of a nonparsed entity declared in the declaration subset of the document that points to a machine-readable version of the cited reference.
          Status   Optional
          Datatype

target   A pointer to the ID of another element.
          Status   Optional
          Datatype

parent   A pointer to another container that holds the container item being described in the current element, e.g., points to the element that describes the box in which a folder is housed. Available in <container> and <physloc>
          Status   Optional
          Datatype